

# Operating Instructions Software Guide



- 1 Preparing for Printing
- 2 Setting Up the Printer Driver
- **3** Other Print Operations
- 4 Using Paper Types that have Unique Names
- 5 Direct Printing from a Digital Camera (PictBridge)
- (6) Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel
- 7 Monitoring and Configuring the Printer
- 8 Using a Printer Server
- 9 Mac OS Configuration
- 10 Security Measures Provided by this Printer
- 11 Appendix

Read this manual carefully before you use this machine and keep it handy for future reference. For safe and correct use, be sure to read the Safety Information before using the machine.

#### **Trademarks**

Microsoft<sup>®</sup>, Windows<sup>®</sup>, Windows NT<sup>®</sup>, Windows Server<sup>®</sup>, and Windows Vista<sup>®</sup> are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe<sup>®</sup>, Acrobat<sup>®</sup>, Adobe Type Manager<sup>®</sup>, PageMaker<sup>®</sup>, and PostScript<sup>®</sup> are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.

Apple®, AppleTalk®, Bonjour®, EtherTalk®, Macintosh®, Mac OS®, and TrueType® are registered trademarks of Apple Inc, registered in the United States and other countries.

UNIX® is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

Citrix® and MetaFrame® are registered trademarks of Citrix Systems, Inc.

Monotype<sup>®</sup> is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging, Inc.

IPS™ is a trademark or registered trademark of Zoran Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in the United States or other countries.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ricoh Company, Ltd is under license.

Netware<sup>®</sup>, IPX<sup>™</sup>, IPX/SPX<sup>™</sup>, Novell Client<sup>™</sup> are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Novell, Inc.

NetScape<sup>®</sup> and NetScape Navigator<sup>®</sup> are registered trademarks of Netscape Communications Corporation.

Solaris<sup>™</sup> is trademark of Sun Microsystems, Inc. in the U.S. and other countries.

PictBridge is a trademark.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all rights to those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

- \* The product name of Windows® 95 is Microsoft® Windows® 95.
- \* [The product name of Windows® 98 is Microsoft® Windows® 98.
- \* The product name of Windows® Me is Microsoft® Windows® Millennium Edition (Windows Me).
- \* [The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server

\* The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional

Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition

Microsoft® Windows® XP Media Center Edition

Microsoft® Windows® XP Tablet PC Edition

\* [The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise

\* The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition

\* [The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition

\* The product names of Windows NT 4.0 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows NT® Workstation 4.0

Microsoft® Windows NT® Server 4.0

# Manuals for This Printer

Refer to the manuals that are relevant to what you want to do with the printer.



- Media differ according to manual.
- The printed and electronic versions of a manual have the same contents.
- Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader must be installed in order to view the manuals as PDF files.
- A Web browser must be installed in order to view the html manuals.

#### **Safety Information**

Contains information about safe usage of this printer.

To avoid injury and prevent damage to the printer, be sure to read this.

#### **Quick Installation Guide**

Contains procedures for removing the printer from its box, connecting it to a computer, and installing its driver.

#### Hardware Guide

Contains information about paper and procedures such as installing options, replacing consumables, responding to error messages, and resolving jams.

#### Software Guide (This manual)

Contains information about using this printer, its software, and its security functions.

#### Security Guide

Contains information for administrators of the printer. It explains security functions that the administrators can use to prevent data tampering or unauthorized use of the printer. Also refer to this manual for the procedure for registering an administrator, as well as setting user and administrator authentication.

#### **UNIX Supplement**

For "UNIX Supplement", please visit our Web site or consult an authorized dealer.

This manual includes descriptions of functions and settings that might not be available on this printer.



- Manuals provided are specific to machine types.
- The following software products are referred to using general names:

Product name	General name
DeskTopBinder Lite and DeskTopBinder Professional* 1	DeskTopBinder

<sup>\*1</sup> Optional

1

# **TABLE OF CONTENTS**

Manuals for This Printer	1
How to Read This Manual	13
Symbols	13
About IP Address	13
Model-Specific Information	14
List of Options	15
Using Keys	16
1. Preparing for Printing	
Confirming the Connection Method	19
Network Connection	19
Local Connection	21
Installing the Printer Driver	23
Quick Install	23
Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port	24
Using the Standard TCP/IP Port	32
Using the LPR Port	35
Using the WSD port	38
Using as a Windows Network Printer	41
Using as a NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer	44
When using the PostScript 3 Printer Driver	45
Form Feed	46
Banner Page	46
Printing after Resetting the Printer	46
Installing the Printer Driver Using USB	47
Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - USB	47
Windows Vista - USB	48
Troubleshooting USB	49
Printing with Parallel Connection	50
Printing with Bluetooth Connection	53
Supported Profiles	53
Adding a Bluetooth Printer	53
Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver	56
Windows 2000	56

Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2	56
Windows XP Home Edition	57
Windows Vista	57
Making Option Settings for the Printer	59
Conditions for Bidirectional Communication	59
If Bidirectional Communication Is Disabled	60
Installing Font Manager	61
Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0	62
Memory Capacity and Paper Size	63
One-sided printing (1200 × 1200 dpi)	63
Duplex printing (1200 × 1200 dpi)	63
2. Setting Up the Printer Driver	
PCL - Accessing the Printer Properties	
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties	65
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties	66
Windows Vista - Accessing the Printer Properties	68
RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties	70
Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties	70
Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties	72
Windows Vista - Accessing the Printer Properties	73
PostScript 3 - Setting Up for Printing	76
Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties	76
Windows Vista - Accessing the Printer Properties	77
Mac OS - Setting Up for Printing	79
Black and White Printing when [Photograph] or [DTP] is Selected for [Document type]	80
3. Other Print Operations	
Printing a PDF File Directly	81
Printing Method	81
Using DeskTopBinder Lite	81
PDF Direct Print Properties	84
Using Commands	85
Unauthorized Copy Control	86
Opening the Unauthorized Copy Control Window	86

Using [Data security for copying]	86
Using [Mask type:]	88
Important Notice	89
Using the Print Job Function	90
Print Job Screen	90
Printing from the Print Job Screen	93
Sample Print	93
Locked Print	96
Hold Print	100
Stored Print	103
Printing from the User ID Screen	107
Printing the Selected Print Job	107
Printing All Print Jobs	108
Form Feed	110
Printing from a Selected Tray	110
Canceling a Print Job	111
Canceling a Print Job	113
Canceling a Print Job Using the Control Panel	113
Windows - Canceling a Print Job from the computer	113
Mac OS - Canceling a Print Job from the computer	114
Checking the Error Log	115
Collate	117
Spool Printing	118
Setting Spool Printing	118
Viewing or Deleting Spooled Jobs Using Web Image Monitor	119
Cover	120
Using the Virtual Printer	121
Adding a Virtual Printer	121
Changing a Virtual Printer Configuration	122
Confirming a Virtual Printer Configuration	122
Deleting a Virtual Printer	123
Printing Using a Virtual Printer	123
4. Using Paper Types that have Unique Names	

From Registration of User Paper Types to Use	125
Registering Names to Paper Types	127
Setting User Paper Types to Trays	128
Printing Using Registered Paper Types	129
5. Direct Printing from a Digital Camera (PictBridge)	
What is PictBridge?	131
PictBridge Printing	132
What Can be Done on This Printer	134
Index Printing	134
Trimming	135
Date and File Name Printing	136
Paper Size	136
Image Print Size	136
Multi-Image-Layout	137
Duplex Printing	139
Printing Quality	139
Color Matching	139
Paper Type Specification	139
Form Printing	140
Toner Saving	140
Camera Memo Printing	140
Exiting PictBridge	141
When PictBridge Printing Does Not Work	142
Other Reference Information	143
6. Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel	
Menu Chart	145
Memory Erase Status Menu	150
Paper Input Menu	151
Changing the Paper Input Menu	151
Paper Input Menu Parameters	152
Maintenance Menu	155
Changing the Maintenance Menu	155
Maintenance Menu Parameters	156

List/Test Print Menu	163
Printing a Configuration Page	163
Interpreting the Configuration Page	163
List/Test Print Menu Parameters	165
System Menu	167
Changing the System Menu	167
System Menu Parameters	167
Print Settings Menu	172
Changing the Print Settings Menu	172
Print Settings Menu Parameters	172
Security Options Menu	181
Changing the Security Options Menu	181
Security Options Menu Parameters	181
Host Interface Menu	186
Changing the Host Interface Menu	186
Host Interface Menu Parameters	186
Language Menu	193
Changing the Language Menu	193
Language Menu Parameters	193
7. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer	
Using Web Image Monitor	195
Displaying Top Page	196
When User Authentication is Set	198
About Menu and Mode	198
Access in the Administrator Mode	200
Displaying Web Image Monitor Help	200
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin	202
Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin	203
Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration	203
Locking the Menus on the Printer's Control Panel	204
Changing the Paper Type	205
Managing User Information	206
Configuring the Energy Saver Mode	211

Setting a Password	212
Checking the Printer Status	213
Changing Names and Comments	213
Load Fax Journal	214
Viewing and Deleting Spool Print Jobs	215
Managing Address Information	216
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	217
Monitoring Printers	217
Checking the Printer Status	218
When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	218
Printer Status Notification by E-Mail	220
Auto E-mail Notification	221
On-demand E-mail Notification	222
Mail Authentication	222
Sending E-mail Notification	224
Remote Maintenance by telnet	227
Using telnet	227
8021x	228
access	229
appletalk	230
authfree	231
autonet	231
bonjour	232
btconfig	234
devicename	234
dhcp	234
dhcp6	235
diprint	236
dns	237
domainname	239
etherauth	239
help	240
hostname	240

ifconfig	240
info	242
ipsec	242
ipp	242
ipv6	243
lpr	243
netware	244
passwd	245
pathmtu	245
prnlog	246
rhpp	246
route	247
set	248
show	251
slp	251
smb	252
snmp	252
sntp	
spoolsw	
ssdp	
ssh	
status	
syslog	
upnp	
web	
wiconfig	
wins	
wsmfp	
NMP	
etting Printer Information over the Network	
Current Printer Status	
Printer Configuration	
nderstanding the Displayed Information	27/

Print Job Information	274
Print Log Information	274
Configuring the Network Interface Board	275
Message List	286
System Log Information	286
Registering Classification Codes.	294
Configuring Classification Codes	295
Specifying the Classification Code for a Print Job	295
8. Using a Printer Server	
Preparing Printer Server	297
Printing Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	297
Using NetWare	299
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x)	300
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5 / 5.1, 6 / 6.5)	301
Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5 / 5.1 or 6 / 6.5 Environment	302
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x)	304
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5 / 5.1, 6 / 6.5)	306
9. Mac OS Configuration	
Mac OS	
Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver and PPD File	309
Setting Up PPD Files	310
Setting Up Options	310
Installing Adobe Type Manager	311
Installing Screen Fonts	311
Changing to EtherTalk	312
Mac OS X	313
Installing the PPD Files	313
Setting Up the PPD Files	313
Setting Up Options	314
Using USB Interface	314
Using Bonjour	315
Changing to EtherTalk	315
Configuring the Printer	317

Using PostScript 3	318
Job Type	318
User Code	327
Paper Size	328
Fit to Paper	328
Input Slot	328
Resolution	329
Orientation Override	329
Duplex Printing	329
Color Mode	330
Gradation	331
Color Profile	331
Color Setting	332
Toner Saving/Level Color	333
Collate	333
Paper Type	333
Black Over Print	334
Image Smoothing	334
Separate into CMYK	335
CMYK Simulation Profile	335
Dithering	335
Gray Reproduction	336
Color Matching	336
Printer Utility for Mac	338
Installing Printer Utility for Mac	338
Starting Printer Utility for Mac	339
Printer Utility for Mac Functions	339
10. Security Measures Provided by this Printer	
Using Authentication and Managing Users	347
Preventing Information Leaks	348
Limiting and Controlling Access	349
Enhanced Network Security	350
Configuring SSL Encryption	351

# 11. Appendix

Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM	353
Viewing the contents of the CD-ROM	353
Printer Drivers for This Printer	354
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin	355
DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client	356
Printing Files Directly from Windows	359
Setup	359
Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address	359
Printing Commands	360
When Using Windows Terminal Service/MetaFrame	364
Operating Environment	364
Supported Printer Drivers	364
Limitations	364
Using DHCP	367
Using AutoNet	367
Configuring the WINS Server	368
Using Web Image Monitor	368
Using telnet	368
Using the Dynamic DNS Function	369
Updating	
DNS Servers Targeted for Operation	
DHCP Servers Targeted for Operation	
Setting the Dynamic DNS Function	
Precautions	
Connecting a Dial-Up Router to a Network	372
	372
Copyright Information about Installed Applications	
expat	
NetBSD	
Netatalk(NetBSD)/NetaTalk 1.4b2+asun2.1.3	
FreeBSD 4.6.2/netipx	
Sablotron	

JPEG LIBRARY	384
SASL	384
Samba(Ver 3.0.4)	385
RSA BSAFE <sup>®</sup>	386
Open SSL	386
Open SSH	388
Open LDAP	392
Heimdal	393
IPS <sup>TM</sup> print language emulations	393
racoon	393
TrouSerS	394
INDEX	399

# How to Read This Manual

### **Symbols**

This manual uses the following symbols:



Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in serious injury or death. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information".

### **ACAUTION**

Indicates important safety notes.

Ignoring these notes could result in moderate or minor injury, or damage to the machine or to property. Be sure to read these notes. They can be found in the "Safety Information".

# 

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.



Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

# **■** Reference

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

[]

Indicates the names of keys that appear on the machine's display panel.

[]

Indicates the names of keys on the machine's control panel.

#### About IP Address

In this manual, "IP address" covers both IPv4 and IPv6 environments. Read the instructions that are relevant to the environment you are using.

# **Model-Specific Information**

In this manual, the following symbols indicate information that relates to a specific printer model.

#### 220-240V

This indicates information about the 220 to 240 V model printer.

Read if you have purchased this model.

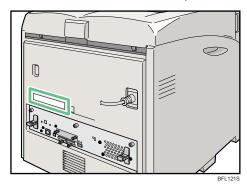
120V

This indicates information about the 120 V model printer.

Read if you have purchased this model.



• Check the label on the rear of the printer to identify the printer's model.



• Dimensions in this manual are given in two units of measure: metric and inch. If your printer is the 220 to 240 V model, refer to the metric units. If your printer is the 120 V model, refer to the inch units.

# **List of Options**

This section provides a list of options for this printer, and how they are referred to as in this manual.

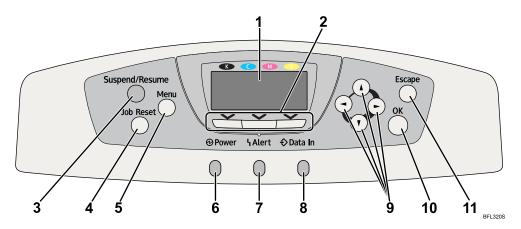
Option list	Description
Paper Feed Unit Type 4000	Paper Feed Unit
Printer Hard Disk Drive Type 420	Hard disk drive
Memory Unit Type G 128 MB	128 MB SDRAM module
Memory Unit Type G 256 MB	256 MB SDRAM module
Gigabit Ethernet Board Type A	Gigabit Ethernet board
120V IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type L	Wireless LAN interface unit
220-240V IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type M	Wireless LAN interface unit
220-240V IEEE 802.11a/g Interface Unit Type P	Wireless LAN interface unit
Bluetooth Interface Unit Type 3245	Bluetooth interface unit
IEEE 1284 Interface Board Type A	IEEE 1284 interface board
Camera Direct Print Card Type E	Camera direct print card
HDD Encryption Unit Type C	HDD encryption unit
Data Overwrite Security Unit Type K	Data overwrite security unit
Data Storage Card Type A	Data storage card
VM Card Type H	VM card



• For details about the specifications of each option, see "Specifications", Hardware Guide.

# **Using Keys**

This section explains names and usage of the parts of the control panel.



#### 1. Display

Displays current printer status and error messages.

When the printer enters energy saver mode, the display back light turns off. For details about energy saver mode, see "System Menu".

#### 2. Selection Keys

Correspond to the function items at the bottom line on the display.

Example: In the initial screen, when the instruction "press [option]" appears in this manual, press the left selection key.

#### 3. [Suspend/Resume] Key

Press this key to suspend a print job. The key lights up while the job is suspended. To resume the job, press this key again.

#### 4. [Job Reset] Key

Press this key to cancel an ongoing print job.

#### 5. [Menu] Key

Press this key to configure and check the current printer settings.

While configuring settings, press this key to return to the initial screen.

#### 6. Power Indicator

Remains lit while the power is on. It is unlit when the power is off or while the printer is in energy saver mode.

#### 7. Alert Indicator

Lights up in red or yellow when a printer error occurs.

Red: printing is not possible/possible but print quality cannot be ensured.

Yellow: printer requires maintenance, such as replacing consumables, shortly.

Follow the instructions that appear on the display.

#### 8. Data In indicator

Blinks when the printer is receiving data from a computer. Lights up if there is data to be printed.

#### 9. Scroll Keys

Press to move the cursor in each direction.

When the  $[^{\blacktriangle}]$   $[^{\blacktriangledown}]$  keys appear in this manual, press the scroll key of the same direction.

#### 10. [OK] Key

Use this key to confirm settings or setting values, or move to the next menu level.

#### 11. [Escape] Key

Press this key to return to the previous condition on the display.

### **■** Reference

• p.167 "System Menu"

# 1. Preparing for Printing

This chapter describes how to connect this printer to your computer, and install the printer driver.

# **Confirming the Connection Method**

This printer supports network and local connection.

Before installing the printer driver, check how the printer is connected. Follow the driver installation procedure that is appropriate to the connection method.

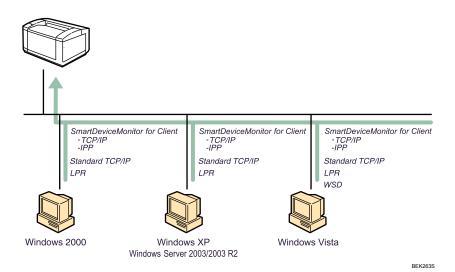
#### **Network Connection**

This printer can be used as a Windows printing port or network printer.

#### Using this printer as the Windows printing port

Network connections can be established through Ethernet, and Wireless LAN.

Available ports are determined based on the combination of Windows operating system version and connection method used.



#### Windows 2000/XP

Connection Method	Available Ports
Ethernet	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port
	Standard TCP/IP port

19

Connection Method	Available Ports
Wireless LAN	LPR port

#### Windows Vista

Connection Method	Available Ports
• Ethernet	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port
Wireless LAN	Standard TCP/IP port
	• LPR port
	WSD port

#### Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

Connection Method	Available Ports
• Ethernet	SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port
Wireless LAN	Standard TCP/IP port
	LPR port



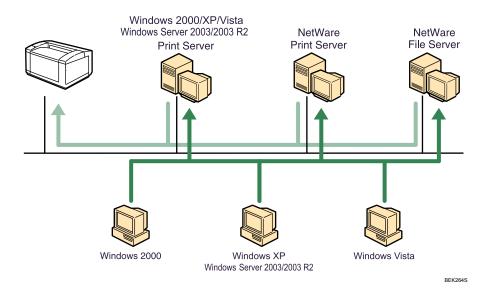
- See the explanation about how to install the printer driver for each type of port.
- For details about SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port, see "Installing the Printer Driver".
- For details about Standard TCP/IP port, see "Installing the Printer Driver".
- For details about LPR port, see "Installing the Printer Driver".
- For details about WSD port, see "Installing the Printer Driver".

#### ■ Reference

• p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Using as a network printer

This printer can be used as the Windows network printer, the NetWare print server, or the NetWare remote printer.



**U**Note

- In an IPv6 environment, NetWare servers cannot be used.
- See the explanation about how to install the printer driver for each type of network printer.
- For details about Windows network printer, see "Using as a Windows Network Printer".
- For details about NetWare print server and remote printer, see "Using as a NetWare Print Server / Remote Printer".

# Reference

- p.41 "Using as a Windows Network Printer"
- p.44 "Using as a NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer"

#### **Local Connection**

Local connections can be established via parallel, USB, and Bluetooth connections.

Available connection methods are determined based on the Windows operating system version used.

#### Windows 2000/XP/Vista:

- USB connections
- Parallel connections
- Bluetooth connections

#### Windows Server 2003/2003 R2:

- USB connections
- Parallel connections

• Bluetooth connections

### **U** Note

- See the explanation about how to install the printer driver for each method of connections.
- For details about Bluetooth connections, see "Printing with Bluetooth Connection", Network Guide.
- For details about USB connections, see "Installing the Printer Driver Using USB".
- For details about parallel connections, see "Printing with Parallel Connection".

#### Reference

- p.47 "Installing the Printer Driver Using USB"
- p.50 "Printing with Parallel Connection"

# **Installing the Printer Driver**

This section explains how to install the printer driver. There are two ways to install the printer driver: using Quick Install, which installs the settings at once, or installing the appropriate driver according to the port you want to use.

#### **Downloading the Printer Driver**

You can install the printer driver from the CD-ROM provided with this printer or download it from the supplier's Web site.

If your operating system is Windows XP Pro x64, Windows Vista x64, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 x64, you must download the printer driver from the supplier's Web site. Select this printer and the operating system you are using, and then download it.

#### Quick Install

Users of Windows 2000/XP/ Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 can install this software easily using the supplied CD-ROM.

Using Quick Install, the PCL printer driver and/or RPCS printer driver, DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client are installed under network environment, and the TCP/IP port will be set.

### 

- To install the printer driver under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrator.
- If you connect using USB, see "Installing the Printer Driver Using USB" and install the printer driver.
- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

4. Click [Quick Install].

The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

- After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].
- 6. Select the printer model you want to use in the [Select Printer] dialog box.

For network connection via TCP/IP, select the printer whose IP address is displayed in [Connect To]. For parallel connection, select the printer whose printer port is displayed in [Connect To].

7. Click [Install].

The printer driver installation starts.

8. Click [Finish].

A message about restarting the computer appears. Restart the computer to complete installation.

Click [Exit] in the first dialog box of the installer, and then take out the CD-ROM.

**U** Note

- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- Select a printer to whose IP address is displayed in [Connect To] to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client when using TCP/IP.
- Quick Install is not available unless bidirectional communication between the printer and computer
  is enabled via parallel connection. For details about bidirectional communication between the printer
  and computer, see "Making Option Settings for the Printer".

#### Reference

- p.47 "Installing the Printer Driver Using USB"
- p.59 "Making Option Settings for the Printer"

#### Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port

# Important

- To install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrator.
- Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client before installing the printer driver when using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

#### Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [DeskTopBinder]-[SmartDeviceMonitor for Client].
- The message to quit all other applications appears. Quit all applications, and then click [Next
   ].

- The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box. After reading through its contents, click [Yes].
- 7. Click [Full install] or [Custom install].

[Full install] installs all required applications: DeskTopBinder Lite and SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

[Custom install] installs selected applications.

- 8. Follow the instructions on the display and then click [Next >] to proceed to the next step.
- After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and click [Complete].

Restart the computer to complete installation.



- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

#### Installing the PCL or RPCS printer driver (TCP/IP)

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- 5. The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

6. Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

- 7. Click [Next>].
- 8. Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

9. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 10. Click [Port], and then click [Add].
- 11. Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [OK].

12. Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

13. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click [Specify Address], and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

- 14. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].
- 15. Set a user code, if necessary.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. No alphabetic characters or symbols can be entered.

- 16. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.
- 17. Click [Continue].

Installation starts.

18. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].



- Setting a user code allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check statistics about the number of sheets which each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you
  cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add
  Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Installing the PostScript 3 printer driver (TCP/IP)

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi, Russian.

4. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

Step 5 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 5. Click [Next>].
- 6. Click [Local printer] or [Local printer attached to this computer.], and then click [Next>].
  If you are using Windows Vista, you do not need to click [Next>].
- 7. Click [Create a new port:].
- 8. Click [DeskTopBinder SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].
- 9. Click [TCP/IP], and then click [Search].

A list of printers using TCP/IP appears.

10. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].

Only printers that respond to a broadcast from the computer appear. To use a printer not listed here, click [Specify Address], and then enter the IP address or host name of the printer.

- Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click
  [Next >].
- 12. Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the [Yes] check box to configure the printer as default.

Step 13 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 13. Specify whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].
- 14. Specify whether or not to print a test page.

If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next].

15. Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.



- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you
  cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add
  Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Installing the PCL or RPCS printer driver (IPP)

1. Quit all applications currently running.

2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

6. Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

- 7. Click [Next>].
- 8. Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

9. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 10. Click [Port], and then click [Add].
- 11. Click [SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [OK].
- 12. Click [IPP].
- 13. In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://printer's IP address/printer" as the printer's address.

If the server authentication is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://printer's IP address/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed). (example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

http://192.168.15.16/printer

https://192.168.15.16/printer

You can enter "http://printer's IP address/ipp" as the printer's address.

14. Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing ports.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the [Printer URL] box becomes the IPP port name.

15. Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

For details about the settings, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

- 16. Click [OK].
- 17. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].

18. Set a user code, if necessary.

Up to 8 numeric characters can be entered. No alphabetic characters or symbols can be entered.

- 19. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.
- 20. Click [Continue].

Installation starts.

21. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.



- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- Setting a user code allows a SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin user to display and check the number of sheets each user prints. For details, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

### Reference

p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Installing the PostScript 3 printer driver (IPP)

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi, Russian.

4. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

Step 5 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 5. Click [Next>].
- 6. Click [Local printer attached to this computer.], and then click [Next >].

If you are using Windows Vista, you do not need to click [Next>].

- 1
- 7. Click [Create a new port:].
- 8. Click [DeskTopBinder SmartDeviceMonitor], and then click [Next >].
- 9. Click [IPP].
- 10. In the [Printer URL] box, enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/printer" as the printer's address.

If the server authentification is issued, to enable SSL (a protocol for encrypted communication), enter "https://(printer's IP address or host name)/printer" (Internet Explorer 5.01, or a higher version must be installed).

(example IP address: 192.168.15.16)

http://192.168.15.16/printer

https://192.168.15.16/printer

You can enter "http://printer's IP address or host name/ipp" as the printer's address.

If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10" to connect to the printer.

11. Enter a name for identifying the printer in [IPP Port Name]. Use a name different from the one of any existing port.

If a name is not specified here, the address entered in the [Printer URL] box becomes the IPP port name.

12. Click [Detailed Settings] to make necessary settings.

If you are using Windows 2000, click [OK] after making necessary settings.

For information about the settings, see DeskTopBinder-SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

- 13. Click [OK].
- Check that the name of the printer driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next
   ].
- 15. Change the name of the printer if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the [Yes] check box to configure the printer as default.

Step 17 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 16. Specify whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].
- 17. Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Next >].

If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next].

18. Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.



 Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

- A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the
  printer driver Help.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you
  cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add
  Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

#### Reference

p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Changing the port settings for SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Follow the procedure below to change the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client settings, such as TCP/IP timeout, recovery/parallel printing, and printer groups.

#### Windows 2000:

- On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
   The [Printers] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 3. On the [Ports] tab, click [Configure Port].

The [Configuration] dialog box appears.

#### Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2:

- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
  - The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
- 3. Click the [Ports] tab, and then click [Configure Port].

The [Port Configuration] dialog box appears.

#### Windows Vista:

- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
  - The [Control Panel] window appears.
- 2. Click [Printer].
  - The [Printers] window appears.
- 3. Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Properties].
- 4. Click the [Ports] tab, and then click [Configure Port].

The [Port Configuration:] dialog box appears.



- For TCP/IP, timeout setting can be configured.
- User, proxy, and timeout settings can be configured for IPP.
- If no settings on the [Recovery/Parallel Printing] tab are available, follow the procedure below.
  - 1. Click [Cancel] to close the [Port Configuration:] dialog box.
  - 2. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, and then right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon on the task tray.
  - 3. Point to [Properties], and then click [Extended Features Settings].
  - 4. Select the [Set Recovery/Parallel Printing for each port] check box.
  - 5. Click [OK] to close the [Extended Features Settings] dialog box.
- For details about these settings, see "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client", or SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

### Using the Standard TCP/IP Port

This describes how to install the PCL, RPCS, or PostScript 3 printer driver using the TCP/IP port.



- To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the Standard TCP/IP Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

#### Installing the PCL or RPCS printer driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- 5. The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

6. Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

ī

- 7. Click [Next>].
- 8. Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

9. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 10. Click [Port], and then click [Add].
- 11. Click [Standard TCP/IP Port], and then click [OK].

Configure the Standard TCP/IP port settings, and then see Windows Help if [Standard TCP/IP Port] does not appear.

- 12. Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.
- 13. Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.

The [Port Name] text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary.

When the device selection appears, select "RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model".

- 14. Click [Next >].
- 15. Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.

The installation start dialog box reappears.

- 16. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].
- 17. Configure the default printer as necessary.
- 18. Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

19. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.



- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you
  cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add
  Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

• p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Installing the PostScript 3 printer driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi, Russian.

4. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

Step 5 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 5. Click [Next>].
- 6. Click [Local printer] or [Local printer attached to this printer], and then click [Next >].
  If you are using Windows Vista, you do not need to click [Next].
- 7. Click [Create a new port:].
- Click [Standard TCP/IP Port], and then click [Next >].
   If you are using other than Windows 2000, [Standard TCP/IP Port] in [Create a new port].
- 9. Click [Next >] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.
- 10. Enter the printer name or IP address in the [Printer Name or IP Address] box.

The [Port Name] text box automatically obtains a port name. Change this name if necessary. When screen for Device selection appears, select "RICOH NetworkPrinter Driver C Model".

- 11. Click [Next>].
- 12. Click [Finish] in the [Add Standard TCP/IP Printer Port Wizard] dialog box.
- Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click
  [Next >].
- 14. Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the [Yes] check box to configure the printer as default.

Step 15 does not apply for other than Windows 2000 users.

- 15. Click [Next>].
- 16. Specify whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].
- 17. Specify whether or not to print a test page.

If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next].

#### 18. Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

# **U** Note

- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the printer driver Help.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

• p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

# **Using the LPR Port**

This describes how to install the PCL, RPCS, or PostScript 3 printer driver using the LPR port.

# **Important**

- To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- In an IPv6 environment, you cannot use the LPR Port. Use the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

# Installing the PCL or RPCS printer driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- 5. The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next>].

6. Select a printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7. Select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

- 8. Click [Next>].
- 9. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 10. Click [Port], and then click [Add].
- 11. Click [LPR Port], and then click [OK].

If [LPR Port] does not appear, see Windows Help and install it.

- 12. Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.
- 13. Enter "lp" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server] box, and then click [OK].
  The port is added.
- 14. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].
- 15. Configure the default printer as necessary.
- 16. Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

17. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.



- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you
  cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add
  Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi, Russian.

4. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

Step 5 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

5. Select [My Computer], and then click [Next >].

If you are using Windows 2000, you can click [Next>] without selecting [My Computer].

- 6. Click [Local printer] or [Local Printer attached to this computer.], and then click [Next >].
  If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next]
- 7. Click [Create a new port:].
- 8. Click [LPR Port], and then click [Next >].
  If you are using other than Windows 2000, [Standard TCP/IP Port] in [Create a new port].
- 9. Enter the printer's IP address in the [Name or address of server providing lpd] box.
- 10. Enter "Ip" in the [Name of printer or print queue on that server box], and then click [OK].
- Check that the name of the printer whose driver you want to install is selected, and then click [Next >].
- 12. Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].

Select the [Yes] check box to configure the printer as default.

Step 13 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 13. Specify whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].
- 14. Specify whether or not to print a test page.

If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next].

15. Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.



- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. If this happens, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the
  printer driver Help.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you
  cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add
  Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

## **■** Reference

p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

# Using the WSD port

This section explains installation when using the WSD port.

# Mportant !

- The WSD port can be used only under Windows Vista.
- To install under Windows Vista, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log
  on as an Administrator.
- If the printer is connected using the WSD port, bi-directional communication is not possible. For details
  about bi-directional communication, see "Making Option Settings for the Printer".
- You can connect to the printer only if both the printer and computer are on the same network segment, or Windows Vista "Network discovery" is enabled. For details, see Windows Help.

## Reference

p.59 "Making Option Settings for the Printer"

#### Installing the PCL or RPCS printer driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. On the [Start] menu, click [Network].

The [Network] window appears, and the device search begins automatically.

3. Right-click the printer's icon, and then click [Install].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

The [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

4. Click [Locate and install driver software (Recommended)].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

- 5. Click [Don't search online].
- 6. Click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].
- 7. Insert the provided CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears, click the [close] button and then proceed to step 8.

8. Click [Browse...], and then specify a location for the printer driver.

If the CD-ROM drive letter is D, the printer driver's source files are stored in "D:\DRIVERS\RPCS \XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1".

9. Click [Next].

If the [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] message appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].

10. Click [Close].

If installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the "WSD" port is added to the [Printers] window.



- The port name that follows "WSD" uses random character strings. It cannot be changed freely.
- To stop the installation, click [Cancel] before the installation is complete. When re-installing the WSD Port, right-click the printer's icon in the [Network] window, and then click [Uninstall].

#### Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Click [Start], and then click [Network].

The [Network] window appears, and the device search begins automatically.

3. Using as the NetWare Print Server / Remote Printer

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

The [Found New Hardware] dialog box appears.

4. Click [Locate and install driver software (Recommended)].

If the [User Account Control] dialog box appears, click [Continue].

The [Found New Hardware] window appears.

- 5. Click [Don't search online].
- Click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)].
- 7. Insert the provided CD-ROM into the computer's CD-ROM drive.

If the [AutoPlay] dialog box appears, click the [close] button and then proceed to step 8.

8. Click [Browse...], and then specify a location for the printer driver.

If the CD-ROM drive letter is D, the printer driver's source files are stored in "D:\DRIVERS\PS\ (Language) \XP\_VISTA\DISK1".

9. Click [Next].

If the [Windows can't verify the publisher of this driver software] message appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].

10. Click [Close].

If installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the "WSD" port is added to the [Printers] window.



- The port name that follows "WSD" uses random character strings. It cannot be changed freely.
- To stop the installation, click [Cancel] before the installation is complete. When re-installing the WSD Port, right-click the printer's icon in the [Network] window, and then click [Uninstall].

# Using as a Windows Network Printer

This describes how to install the PCL, RPCS or PostScript 3 printer driver when using the printer as a Windows network printer.

To use the print server, install the printer driver by selecting "Network printer server", and then select the Windows 2000/XP/Vista, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 shared printer.

This section assumes that the client has already been configured to communicate with a Windows 2000/XP/Vista, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 print server. Do not begin the following procedure before the client is set up and configured correctly.

# Mportant (

- To install the printer driver under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- If you print with a print server connected to the printer using the SmartDeviceMonitor port, Recovery
  Printing and Parallel Printing cannot be used from the client.
- If you print under Windows XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 print server, notification functions of SmartDeviceMonitor may not be used with the client.
- You can install the printer driver from the CD-ROM provided with this printer or download it from the supplier's Web site.
- If your operating system is Windows XP Pro x64, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 x64, you must download the printer driver from the manufacturer's Web site. Select this printer and the operating system you are using, and then download it.

#### Installing the PCL or RPCS Printer Driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- 5. The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next>].

6. Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

7. Click [Next>].

8. Select the [Printer Name] check box to select the printer models you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

9. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 10. Click [Port], and then click [Add].
- 11. Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].
- 12. Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Browse for Printer] window.
- 13. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [OK].
- 14. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].
- 15. Configure the user code as necessary.

For an RPCS printer driver, a user code can be set after the printer driver installation.

For details about user code, see the printer driver Help.

- 16. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.
- 17. Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

18. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

#### Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi, Russian.

4. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

Step 5 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

- 5. Click [Next>].
- 6. Click [Network printer] or [A network printer, or a printer attached to another computer].

  If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next].

7. Select [Browse for a printer], and then click [Next >].

If you are using Windows 2000, select the location method from the [Locate Your Printer] screen before clicking [Next>].

- 8. Double-click the computer name you want to use as a print server in the [Shared printers] window.
- 9. Select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next >].
- 10. The printer driver installation starts.
- 11. Click [Next>].

Select the [Yes] check box to configure the printer as default.

12. Click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

## **U** Note

- A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the
  printer driver Help.
- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run.
- If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Drive".

# Reference

• p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

# Using as a NetWare Print Server/Remote Printer

This describes how to set up the Windows computer used as the NetWare client.

# 

- To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- In an IPv6 environment, NetWare servers cannot be used.

The following explanation assumes NetWare Client is installed on the client computer and the NetWare server environment is correctly set up. Install all necessary client applications before following this procedure.

Set up the printer driver while logging on to the NetWare file server.

The following values are used in the example:

- Operating system: Windows 98
- NetWare version: 4.1
- File server name: CAREE
- Queue name: R-QUEUE
- 1. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.

2. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 3. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

5. Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

- 6. Click [Next>].
- 7. Select the [Printer Name] check box to select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

8. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 9. Click [Port], and then click [Add].
- 10. Click [Network Printer], and then click [OK].
- 11. Double click the name of the NetWare file server on the network tree.

The created queue is displayed.

- 12. Select the print queue, and then click [OK].
- 13. Check that the port of the selected printer is displayed in [Port].
- 14. Click [Continue].

The printer driver installation starts.

- 15. Click [Finish] in the [Select Program] dialog box.
- 16. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

17. After restarting the computer, open the printer properties from the [Printers and Faxes] window.

Under Windows 2000 or Windows Server 2003 R2, launch the [Printers] window, and then open the printer properties.

18. Click the [NetWare setting] tab.

Under Windows Vista or Windows Server 2003 R2, on the [Printer Settings] tab, clear the [Form Feed] and [Enable Banner] check boxes.

Do not select these check boxes since they are automatically selected by the printer driver. If you select the check boxes, the printer may not print correctly.

19. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.



- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- The protocol is set to inactive as default. Enable it using SmartDeviceMonitor or Telnet.

# When using the PostScript 3 Printer Driver



• In an IPv6 environment, NetWare servers cannot be used.

Follow the procedure below to set up the PostScript 3 printer driver.

1. In the [Printers] or [Printers and Faxes] window, open the printer properties.

2. Click the [PostScript] tab.

When using Windows 2000/XP/Vista, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, click the [Device Settings] tab, and then proceed to step to clear the check box.

- 3. Click [Advanced].
- 4. Clear the [Send CTRL+D before job] and [Send CTRL+D after job] check boxes, and then click [OK].
- 5. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.

#### Form Feed

Do not use NetWare to configure form feed. Form feed is controlled by the printer driver on Windows. If NetWare form feed is configured, the printer may not print properly.

Follow the procedure below to disable form feed according to the operating system used:

 Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, clear the [Form feed] check box on the [NetWare Settings] tab in the printer properties dialog box.

#### **Banner Page**

Do not use NetWare to configure a banner page.

Follow the procedure below to disable banner pages according to the operating system used:

• Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, clear the [Enable banner] check box on the [NetWare Settings] tab in the printer properties dialog box.

# **Printing after Resetting the Printer**

Printer to print server connection requires 30 - 40 seconds to resume after the printer is reset. During this period, jobs may be accepted (depending on NetWare specifications) but not printed.

To print after resetting the printer as the remote printer, check on the print server that the remote printer is disconnected, or wait for two minutes before trying to print.

# Installing the Printer Driver Using USB

This section explains how to install printer drivers using USB.

Before installing, check that only the operating system is running on the computer and no print jobs are in progress.

The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

## Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - USB

# **Important**

 Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the [Printers] window.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the CD-ROM provided.

- 1. Check that the power of the printer is off.
- 2. Connect the printer and computer using the USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

3. Turn on the power of the printer.

Found New Hardware Wizard starts, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

- 4. In the Found New Hardware Wizard display, click [Search for a suitable driver for my device [recommended]], and then click [Next >].
- 5. Select the [Specify location] check box, and then click [Next >].
- 6. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If Auto Run starts, click [Cancel], and then [Exit].

7. Specify the location where the source files of the printer driver is stored.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following locations:

- RPCS
  - D:\DRIVES\RPCS\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1
- PCL 5c

D:\DRIVES\PCL5C\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

PCL 6

D:\DRIVES\PCL6\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

PostScript 3
 D:\DRIVES\PS3\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

- 8. Check the printer driver location, and then click [OK].
- 9. Click [Next>].
- 10. Click [Finish].

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the [Printers] window.



- To disable Auto Run, press the left Shift key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it
  pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.
- The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.

#### Windows Vista - USB



 Installing a printer driver requires Administrators permission. Log on using an account that has Administrators permission.

If the printer driver has already been installed, plug and play is enabled, and the icon of the printer connected to the "USB" port is added to the [Printers] window.

The printer drivers can be installed from the CD-ROM provided with this printer.

If the printer driver is not installed, follow the plug-and-play instructions of the printer to install it from the CD-ROM provided.

- 1. Check that the power of the printer is off.
- 2. Connect the printer and computer using a USB cable.

Connect the USB cable firmly.

3. Turn on the power of the printer.

Found New Hardware Wizard starts, and USB Printing Support is installed automatically.

- 4. In the Found New Hardware Wizard display, click [Search for a suitable driver for my device [recommended]], and then click [Next >].
- 5. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

If Auto Run starts, click [Cancel], and then [Exit].

6. Select the [Include this location in the search] check box under [Search for the best driver in these location], and then click [Browse] to select the printer driver location.

If the CD-ROM drive is D, the source files of the printer driver are stored in the following locations:

RPCS

D:\DRIVES\RPCS\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

• PCL 5c

 $D:\DRIVES\PCL5C\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1$ 

PCL 6

D:\DRIVES\PCL6\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

PostScript 3

D:\DRIVES\PS3\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1

- 7. Check the printer driver location, and then click [Next >].
- 8. Click [Continue].
- 9. Click [Finish].

If the installation is successful, the icon of the printer connected to the "USB001" port is added to the [Printers and Faxes] window.



- To disable Auto Run, press the left Shift key when inserting the CD-ROM into the drive and keep it
  pressed until the computer finishes reading from the CD-ROM.
- The number after "USB" varies depending on the number of printers connected.

# **Troubleshooting USB**

Problem	Solutions
The printer is not recognized automatically.	Turn off the power of the printer, reconnect the USB cable, and then turn it on again.
Windows has already configured the USB settings.	Open Windows' Device Manager, and then, under [Universal Serial Bus controllers], remove any conflicting devices. Conflicting devices have a [!] or [?] icon by them. Take care not to accidentally remove required devices. For details, see Windows Help.
	When using Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, an erroneous device is displayed under [USB Controller] in the [Device Manager] dialog box.

# **Printing with Parallel Connection**

This describes how to install the PCL, RPCS, or PostScript 3 printer driver when using the parallel port.

To use a printer connected using a parallel interface, click [LPT1] when installing the printer driver.

# 

- To install this printer driver under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, you must have an account that has Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- If you are using Windows 2000, you can install the printer driver from the CD-ROM provided with this printer or download it from the supplier's Web site.
- If your operating system is Windows XP Pro x64, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 x64, you must download the printer driver from the manufacturer's Web site. Select this printer and the operating system you are using, and then download it.

#### Installing the PCL or RPCS printer driver:

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [PCL/RPCS Printer Drivers].
- 5. The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

After reading the agreement, click [I accept the agreement.], and then click [Next >].

6. Select the printer driver you want to use in the [Select Program] dialog box.

You can select several printer drivers.

- 7. Click [Next>].
- 8. Select the [Printer Name] check box to select the printer model you want to use.

The printer name can be changed in the [Change settings for 'Printer Name'] box.

9. Double-click the printer name to display the printer settings.

The details shown in [Comment], [Driver], and [Port] vary depending on the operating system, printer model, and port.

- 10. Check that [LPT1:] is shown in [Port].
- 11. Select the [Default Printer] check box to configure the printer as default.
- 12. Click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

13. After the installation is completed, select one of the options to restart the computer either now or later, and then click [Finish].

Restart the computer to complete installation.

#### Installing the PostScript 3 printer driver:

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

The printer driver with the selected language will be installed. The English printer driver is installed when the following language is selected: Cestina, Magyar, Polski, Portugues, Suomi, Russian.

4. Click [PostScript 3 Printer Driver].

Add Printer Wizard starts.

Step 5 does not apply for Windows Vista users.

5. Click [Next>].

The following procedure depends on your operation system.

#### Windows 2000:

1. [Local printer], and then click [Next >].

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

- 2. Select [LPT1] at the [Printer Port] dialog box, and then click [Next >].
- 3. Select whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].
- Select the name of the machine whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next
   ].
- 5. Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Restart the computer to complete installation.

#### Other than Windows 2000:

1. Click [Local printer attached to this computer].

If you are using other than Windows Vista, click [Next].

2. Select the port you want to use, and then click [Next >].

A dialog box for selecting the printer manufacturer and model name appears.

Select the name of the machine whose driver you want to install, and then click [Next >].

- 4. Click [Close] to close the [Printer Port] dialog box.
- 5. Click [Next>].
- 6. Change the printer name if you want, and then click [Next >].
  Step 7 does not apply for Windows Vista users.
- 7. Select whether or not to share the printer, and then click [Next >].
- 8. Specify whether or not to print a test page, and then click [Finish].

The printer driver installation starts.

Restart the computer to complete installation.



- A user code can be set after the printer driver installation. For information about user code, see the
  printer driver Help.
- To stop installation of the selected software, click [Cancel] before installation is complete.
- Auto Run may not work with certain operating system settings. In that case, launch "Setup.exe" on the CD-ROM root directory.
- A message appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed. If there is, you cannot install the printer driver using Auto Run. If you still want to install the printer driver, use [Add Printer]. See "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver".

# **■** Reference

• p.56 "Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver"

# **Printing with Bluetooth Connection**

This describes how to print with Bluetooth devices.

# **Supported Profiles**

The following profiles are supported:

- SPP (Serial Port Profile)
- HCRP (Hardcopy Cable Profile)
- BIP (Basic Imaging Profile)

#### Restrictions on SPP, HCRP

- A maximum of two Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computers can be connected at the same time using the Bluetooth interface: one by SPP, one by HCRP.
- When connecting more than one Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computer at the same time, the first device that establishes connection is selected. When selecting the connection between the other devices, cancel the first established connection.
- SPP connection does not support bidirectional communications.
- HCRP connection supports bidirectional communications.

#### **Restrictions on BIP**

- For BIP connection, a module including PostScript 3 must be installed in the machine.
- Only one Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computer can be connected via BIP.
- Only JPEG images can be printed using BIP.
- User codes are disabled for BIP.
- You cannot print if print functions are restricted.
- Some printers do not support BIP.

Instructions in this manual relate to printing via HRCP. To print using SPP or BIP, see the Help supplied with the Bluetooth adapter you want to use, or the Microsoft Web site.

# Adding a Bluetooth Printer

The following procedures explain how to install a Bluetooth printer on a computer that is running Windows XP or Windows Vista.

If your computer is running SP1 or an earlier version of Windows XP, there are additional applications that you must install. For details about these, see the Help supplied with your Bluetooth device.

# 

- To perform a printer installation, your account must have Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- To connect to a Bluetooth printer, your computer must have a Bluetooth device installed. Make sure
  a Bluetooth device is installed on your computer.

#### Windows XP

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

2. Click [Add a printer].

The [Add Printer Wizard] window opens.

- 3. Click [Next>].
- 4. Click [Bluetooth Printer], and then click [Next >].

The computer begins searching for available Bluetooth printers.

If a new printer is discovered, the [Found New Hardware Wizard] window appears. To ignore a discovered device and continue searching, click [Cancel]. The computer resumes searching for other available Bluetooth printers.

- Click [No, I will not connect], and then click [Next >].
- 6. Click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].
- Insert the CD-ROM provided with this machine into your computer's CD-ROM drive, select
  the [Search removable media (floppy, CD-ROM...)] check box, and then click [Next >].
- 8. If the [Hardware Installation] window appears, click [Continue].
- 9. If the installation was successful, click [Finish].
- 10. Select [Test Print], and then click [Next >].
- 11. Click [Finish].



- Actual Bluetooth printer operations will vary according to your Bluetooth device and/or Bluetoothinstalled computer. For details, see the Help supplied with your Bluetooth device and/or Bluetoothequipped computer.
- After printing the test page, check it, and then click [Close] to close the window.
- If there is a problem with the test page, click [Troubleshooting] in the test print window.

#### Windows Vista



- To perform a printer installation, your account must have Manage Printers permission. Log on as an Administrators or Power Users group member.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2. In the "Hardware and Sound" area, click [Printers].
- 3. In the top part of the window, click [Add a printer].
- 4. In the [Add Printer] window, select [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer], and then click [Next].

The computer begins searching for available Bluetooth devices.

From the list of discovered devices, select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next].

All discovered wireless printers appear in the list of discovered printers, not only Bluetooth printers. Make sure the printer you select is a Bluetooth printer.

- 6. Insert the CD-ROM provided with this machine into your computer's CD-ROM drive, and then click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)] on the [Found New Hardware] display.
- 7. In the [Found New Hardware] window, select the printer driver you want to use, and then click [Next].

The printer driver installation starts.

- 8. If the [Windows Security] window appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
- 9. Click [Close].
- If you want to change the printer name, enter the new name in the [Printer Name Settings]
  window.
- 11. If you want to print a test page, click [Printing Test Page] on the "Test Print" page. Otherwise, click [Finish].



- If you print the test page, after checking it, click [Close] to close the test print window.
- If there is a problem with the test page, click [Troubleshooting Printer Problems] in the test print window.

55

# Messages Displayed When Installing the Printer Driver

This section describes what to do if a message appears when installing the printer driver.

Message number 58 or 34 indicates that the printer driver cannot be installed using Auto Run. Install the printer driver using [Add Printer] or [Install Printer].

Message number 58 appears if there is a newer version of the printer driver already installed.

#### Windows 2000

This section describes the procedure under Windows 2000.

- 1. On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
- 2. Double-click the Add Printer icon.
- 3. Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.

If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the driver is  $\DRIVERS\(RPCS, PCL6, or PCL5C)\XP_VISTA\(language)\DISK1. If the installer starts, click [Cancel] to quit.$ 

4. Specify a port.



 Available ports vary according to your Windows operating system or the type of interface. For details, see "Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

• p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

This section describes the procedure under Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2.

- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
- 2. Click [Add a printer].
- 3. Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.

If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the driver is \DRIVERS\(RPCS, PCL6, or PCL5C) \XP\_VISTA\(language)\DISK1. If the installer starts, click [Cancel] to quit.

4. Specify a port.

**U** Note

 Available ports vary according to your Windows operating system or the type of interface. For details, see "Installing the Printer Driver".

## ■ Reference

• p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Windows XP Home Edition

This section describes the procedure under Windows XP Home Edition.

- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2. Click [Printer and Other Hardware].
- 3. Click [Printers and Faxes].
- 4. Click [Add a Printer].
- 5. Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.

If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the driver is \DRIVERS\(RPCS, PCL6, or PCL5C) \XP\_VISTA\(language)\DISK1. If the installer starts, click [Cancel] to quit.

6. Specify a port.



 Available ports vary according to your Windows operating system or the type of interface. For details, see "Installing the Printer Driver".

# Reference

• p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"

#### Windows Vista

This section describes the procedure under Windows Vista.

- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
- 2. Click [Hardware and Sound].
- 3. Click [Printers].
- 4. Click [Add a printer].
- 5. Follow the instructions in Add Printer Wizard.

If the printer driver is on a CD-ROM, the location of the driver is \DRIVERS\(RPCS, PCL6, or PCL5C) \XP\_VISTA\(language)\DISK1. If the installer starts, click [Cancel] to quit.

6. Specify a port.

• Available ports vary according to your Windows operating system or the type of interface. For details, see "Installing the Printer Driver".

# **■** Reference

• p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"

# **Making Option Settings for the Printer**

Make option settings for the printer using the printer driver when bidirectional communication is disabled.

#### **Conditions for Bidirectional Communication**

Bidirectional communication allows information about paper size and feed direction settings to be automatically sent to the printer. You can check printer status from your computer.

- Bidirectional communication is supported by Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2.
- If you use the RPCS printer driver and bidirectional communication is enabled under Windows 2000, the [Change Accessories] tab is unavailable.

To support bidirectional communication, the following conditions must be met:

#### When connected with parallel cables

- The computer must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must support bidirectional communication.
- The interface cable must support bidirectional communication.
- The printer must be connected to the computer using the standard parallel cables and parallel connectors.
- Under Windows 2000, [Enable bidirectional support] must be selected, and [Enable printer
  pooling] must not be selected on the [Ports] tab with the RPCS printer driver.

#### When connected with the network

- The printer must support bidirectional communication.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Client included on the CD-ROM must be installed, and TCP/IP must be used.
- Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, [Enable bidirectional support] must be selected, and [Enable printer pooling] must not be selected on the [Ports] tab with the RPCS printer driver.
- In addition to the above, one of the following conditions must also be met:
  - The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port and the TCP/IP protocol must be used.
  - IPP port name must include the IP address when using the IPP protocol.

#### When connected with USB

- The printer must be connected to the computer's USB port using the USB interface cable (for Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2).
- The computer must support bidirectional communication.



- The RPCS printer driver supports bidirectional communication and updates the printer status automatically.
- The PCL printer driver supports bidirectional communication. You can update the printer status manually.
- Install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client from the supplied CD-ROM.

#### If Bidirectional Communication Is Disabled

Set up option settings when bidirectional communication is disabled.



- Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, Manage Printers
  permission is required to change the printer properties in the [Printers] folder. Log on as an
  Administrators or Power Users group member.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

When using Windows 2000, point to [Settings] on the [Start] menu, and then click [Printers]. The [Printers] window appears.

When using Windows Vista, click [Control Panel] on the [start] menu, and then click [Printer]. The [Printers] window appears.

- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

When using Windows Vista, right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click the [Properties].

4. Click the [Change Accessories] tab.

If options in the [Change Accessories] tab are disabled, bidirectional connection is enabled. In this case, no change is necessary for option settings.

If you are using the RPCS printer driver, click the [Change Accessories] tab.

- 5. Select options installed from the [Select printer options:] area, and then make the necessary settings.
- Select the total amount of the memory in [Total memory:] when the optional SDRAM module is added.
- 7. Under [Paper source tray settings:], click the tray to be used, and then select the appropriate size, position, and type for the tray. Select the [Do not use Auto Tray Select] check box to exclude the tray from the targets of automatic tray selection.
- 8. Click [OK] to close the printer properties dialog box.

# **Installing Font Manager**

# € Important

- Under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, installing applications by Auto Run requires Administrator privilege. To install a printer driver by Auto Run, log on using an account that has Administrator privilege.
- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

- 3. Click [Font Manager].
- 4. Follow the instructions on the display.

1

# Using Adobe PageMaker Version 6.0, 6.5, or 7.0

Under Windows 2000/XP, or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 with Adobe PageMaker, you need to copy PPD files to the PageMaker folder.

PPD files have the .ppd extension in the folder "DRIVERS\PS\\XP\_VISTA\(Language)\DISK1" on the CD-ROM.

The "XP\_VISTA" folder inside the "PS" folder is for Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2. Use the folder that is appropriate for the operating system you are currently using.

The third folder "(Language)" may be substituted by an appropriate language name.

Copy the .ppd file to the PageMaker folder.

• For PageMaker 6.0 default installation

The directory is "C:\PM6\RSRC\PPD4".

• For PageMaker 6.5 default installation

The directory is "C: \PM65 \RSRC \USENGLISH \PPD4".

The "USENGLISH" may vary depending on your language selection.

• For PageMaker 7.0 default installation

The directory is "C:\PM7\RSRC\USENGLISH\PPD4".

The "USENGLISH" may vary depending on your language selection.



- If the driver is not set correctly after copying the ".ppd" file, printing may not be performed properly.
- When using PageMaker, the optional features that can be selected by the printer driver will not be
  active. The following procedure describes how to activate the optional printer features.
  - On the [File] menu, click [Print].
     The [Print Document] dialog box appears.
  - 2. Make the necessary settings in the [Features] box.

# **Memory Capacity and Paper Size**

Additional memory apart from standard memory may be required depending on the paper size and data type.

# 

• When printing from bypass tray, duplex printing will not be supported regardless of the memory capacity, and only one-side will be printed.

# One-sided printing (1200 × 1200 dpi)

Memory capacity	Printable paper sizes
256 MB (standard)	A4, B5 JIS, A5, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×14", 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×11", 216×355.6 mm, 216×900 mm <sup>*</sup> 1
384 MB (standard and 128 MB)	A4, B5 JIS, A5, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×14", 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×11", 216×355.6 mm, 216×900 mm
512 MB (standard and 256 MB)	A4, B5 JIS, A5, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×14", 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×11", 216×355.6 mm, 216×900 mm

<sup>\*1</sup> Complex images might fail to print out properly on maximum custom sized paper.

# Duplex printing (1200 × 1200 dpi)

Memory capacity	Printable paper sizes
256 MB (standard)	A4 <sup>*1</sup> , B5 JIS, A5, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×14" <sup>*1</sup> , 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×11" <sup>*1</sup>
384 MB (standard and 128 MB)	A4, B5 JIS, A5, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×14", 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×11"
512 MB (standard and 256 MB)	A4, B5 JIS, A5, 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×14", 8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> "×11"

<sup>\*1</sup> Complex images might fail to print out properly on maximum custom sized paper.

# 2. Setting Up the Printer Driver

This chapter explains the printer properties and how to make changes to the printer settings.

# **PCL - Accessing the Printer Properties**

## Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

#### Making printer default settings - the printer properties

# **Important**

- To change the printer's default settings (including settings for options), log on using an account that
  has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrator and Power Users groups have
  Manage Printers permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
   The [Printers] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
   The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

## Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
   The [Printers] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3. On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following procedure explains how to make printer settings for a specific application using Windows 2000 Wordpad as an example.

- 1. On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
  - The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. In the [Select Printer] list, select the printer you want to use.
- 3. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- Procedures for opening the [Printing Preferences] dialog box vary depending on the application. For
  details, see the manuals provided with the application.
- Any settings you make using this procedure apply to the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from the application.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

## Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties

## Making printer default settings - the printer properties



- To change the printer's default settings (including settings for options), log on using an account that
  has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have
  Manage Printers permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual user. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3. On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following procedure explains making printer settings for Windows XP WordPad as an example of how to make printer settings for a specific application.

- On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
   The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. In the [Select Printer] list, select the printer you want to use.

3. Click [Preferences].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- Procedures for opening the [Printing Preferences] dialog box vary depending on the application. For
  details, see the manuals provided with the application.
- Any settings you make using this procedure apply to the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used the defaults when printing from the application.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

# Windows Vista - Accessing the Printer Properties

#### Making printer default settings - the printer properties



- To change the printer's default settings (including settings for options), log on using an account that
  has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators group have Manage Printers
  permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].

The [Control Panel] window appears.

- 2. In "Hardware and Sound", click [Printer].
- Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Properties].
   The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

## Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printing Preferences] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
   The [Control Panel] window appears.
- 2. In "Hardware and Sound", click [Printer].
- 3. Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Printing Preferences...].

  The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

## Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following procedure explains how to make printer settings for a specific application using Windows Vista Wordpad as an example.

- 1. On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
  - The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. In the [Select Printer] list, select the printer you want to use.
- 3. Click [Preferences].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- Procedures for opening the [Printing Preferences] dialog box vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application.
- Any settings you make using this procedure apply to the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used the defaults when printing from the application.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

# **RPCS - Accessing the Printer Properties**

There are two dialog box types of the [Printer Properties] dialog box.

"Multi-tab" is used as an example in this manual. For details about changing the dialog box types, see the printer driver Help.

#### Multi-tab

This dialog box type is designed for users who often change print settings to perform various printing operations.

#### **Custom Setting**

This dialog box type is designed for users who rarely change print settings. This type of dialog box may vary depending on the installed options.

## Windows 2000 - Accessing the Printer Properties

#### Making printer default settings - the printer properties

# **☆ Important**

- To change the printer's default settings (including settings for options), log on using an account that
  has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have
  Manage Printers permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].

The [Printers] window appears.

- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

When you open the [Printer Properties] dialog box for the first time after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After you click [OK], the [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

## Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
   The [Printers] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].
   The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following procedure explains making printer settings for Windows 2000 WordPad as an example of how to make printer settings for a specific application.

- On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
   The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.
- 3. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- Procedures for opening the [Printing Preferences] dialog box vary depending on the application. For
  details, see the manuals provided with the application.
- Any settings you make using this procedure apply to the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used the defaults when printing from the application.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

# Windows XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties

#### Making printer default settings - the printer properties



- To change the printer's default settings (including settings for options), log on using an account that
  has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have
  Manage Printers permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

When you open the [Printer Properties] dialog box for the first time after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After you click [OK], the [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- 3. On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following procedure explains making printer settings for Windows XP WordPad as an example of how to make printer settings for a specific application.

- On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
   The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. In the [Select Printer] list, select the printer you want to use.
- Click [Preferences].
   The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- Procedures for opening the [Printing Preferences] dialog box vary depending on the application. For
  details, see the manuals provided with the application.
- Any settings you make using this procedure apply to the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used the defaults when printing from the application.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

# Windows Vista - Accessing the Printer Properties

# Making printer default settings - the printer properties



- To change the printer's default settings (including settings for options), log on using an account that
  has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators group have Manage Printers
  permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].

The [Control Panel] window appears.

- 2. In "Hardware and Sound", click [Printer].
- Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Properties].

The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

When you open the [Printer Properties] dialog box for the first time after installing the RPCS printer driver, a confirmation message appears. After you click [OK], the [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for individual users. Settings made in the [Pinter Preferences] dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].

The [Control Panel] window appears.

- 2. Click [Printer] in "Hardware and Sound".
- Right-click the icon of the printer you want to use, and then click [Printing Preferences...].
   The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- The settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application.

To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following procedure explains how to make printer settings for a specific application using Windows Vista Wordpad as an example.

1. On the [File] menu, click [Print...].

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- 2. In the [Select Printer] list, select the printer you want to use.
- 3. Click [Preferences].

The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the settings you require, and then click [OK].



- Procedures for opening the [Printing Preferences] dialog box vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application.
- Any settings you make using this procedure apply to the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used the defaults when printing from the application.
- For details, see the printer driver Help.

# PostScript 3 - Setting Up for Printing

Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 - Accessing the Printer Properties

## Making printer default settings - the printer properties

# Mportant !

- To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account that has Manage Printers permission. Members of the Administrators and Power Users groups have Manage Printers permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
   The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Properties].
   The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].



- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- Do not make a setting for [Form to Tray Assignment].
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer default settings - printing preferences



- You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the [Printer Properties]
  dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].
   The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Printing Preferences...].
   The [Printing Preferences] dialog box appears.

4. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].



- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows XP.

- On the [File] menu, click [Print...].
   The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the printer you want to use in the [Select Printer] list.
- 3. Make the necessary settings, and then click [Print] to start printing.



- The procedure to open the [Printing Preferences] dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings
  made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

# Windows Vista - Accessing the Printer Properties

#### Making printer default settings - the printer properties



- To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account
  that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators,
  and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the [Printer Properties] dialog box are applied to all users.
- On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
   The [Printers] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.

3. On the [File] menu, click [Properties].

The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

4. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].



- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- Do not make a setting for [Form to Tray Assignment].
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer default settings - default



- To change the printer default settings including option configuration settings, log on using an account
  that has Full Control permission. Members of the Administrators, Server Operators, Print Operators,
  and Power Users groups have Full Control permission by default.
- You cannot change the printer default settings for each user. Settings made in the [Printer Properties]
  dialog box are applied to all users.
- 1. On the [Start] menu, point to [Settings], and then click [Printers].
  - The [Printers] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use.
- On the [File] menu, click [Document Defaults...].
   The [Default] dialog box appears.
- 4. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].



- Settings you make here are used as the default settings for all applications.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

#### Making printer settings from an application

You can make printer settings for a specific application. To make printer settings for a specific application, open the [Printer Properties] dialog box from that application. The following explains how to make settings for the WordPad application provided with Windows Vista.

- On the [File] menu, click [Print].
   The [Print] dialog box appears.
- 2. Select the printer you want to use in the [Name:] list, and then click [Properties].

The [Printer Properties] dialog box appears.

- 3. Make the necessary settings, and then click [OK].
- 4. Click [OK] to start printing.



- The procedure to open the [Printer Properties] dialog box may vary depending on the application. For details, see the manuals provided with the application you use.
- With some applications, the printer driver settings are not used, and the application's own default settings are applied.
- Any settings you make in the following procedure are valid for the current application only.
- General users can change the properties displayed in the [Print] dialog box of an application. Settings made here are used as defaults when printing from this application.
- For details about settings, see the printer driver Help.

## Mac OS - Setting Up for Printing

#### Making paper settings from an application

- 1. Open the file you want to print.
- 2. On the [File] menu, click [Page Setup].
- 3. Check that the printer you want to use is displayed in [Printer:], and then select the paper size you want to use in [Paper:].

Under Mac OS X, select the paper size in [Paper Size].

If the printer you want to use is not displayed in [Printer:], select the printer you want to use.

4. Configure the settings, and then click [OK].



• The [Page Setup] dialog box varies depending on the application you use. For details, see the manuals provided with the Mac OS.

#### Setting up for printing from an application

- 1. Open the file you want to print.
- 2. On the [File] menu, click [Print].
- 3. Check that the printer is selected in the [Printer] list, and then make the printer settings.
- 4. Configure the settings, and then click [OK].

# Black and White Printing when [Photograph] or [DTP] is Selected for [Document type]

If you select [Photograph] or [DTP] for [Document type] in the [Printing Preferences] dialog box, black areas of text and line art might be detected as color images, depending the application you are using. If this happens, the document might be printed and counted as a CMYK image.

To print and count the document as a Black and White image, use the following procedure to set the color to black and white in the printer driver.

- In the printer driver's [Printing Preferences] dialog box, click the [Print Quality] tab.
- 2. Select the [User settings] check box.
- 3. In the list box, select a user setting.
- 4. Click [Change User Settings...].
- 5. On the [Image Adjustments] tab, select a document type in the [Load document types:] list.
  The following document types are selectable:

[Photograph (Quality)], [Photograph (Speed)], [Photograph (High Speed)], [DTP (Quality)], [DTP (Speed)], and [DTP (High Speed)].

6. In the [Gray reproduction (Txt/Line Art):] list, select [K (Black)].

The gray reproduction is set to pure black, and the [Load document types:] list becomes blank. If you select the [Print as bitmap] check box on the [Misc.] tab, the gray reproduction setting is ignored, and black areas of text and line art are printed and counted as CMYK images.

7. Click [OK].



 Black areas of text and line art that were produced using colors other than black and grey are printed out and counted as CMYK images even if they appear as black or grey on the screen.

# 3. Other Print Operations

This chapter explains the various printing functions, including Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, Stored Print, and PDF Direct Print.

# **Printing a PDF File Directly**

You can send PDF files directly to the printer for printing, without having to open a PDF application.



- This function is possible for genuine Adobe PDF files only.
- Version 1.3, 1.4, 1.5, and 1.6 PDF files are compatible.
- PDF files created using PDF version 1.5 Crypt Filter functions or more than eight DeviceN Color Space components cannot be printed.
- PDF files created using PDF version 1.6 watermark note functions, extended optional contents, or page size exceeds 5.08 m cannot be printed.
- PDF version 1.7 (Acrobat 8.0) files created without any functions that are exclusive to PDF version 1.7 can be printed.
- Some types of High Compression PDF files may not be printed.



Paper size errors may occur when printing on custom size paper.

# **Printing Method**

There are the two methods of printing the PDF files directly, either using the DeskTopBinder Lite, or entering commands.

# Using DeskTopBinder Lite

#### Installing DeskTopBinder Lite

Follow the procedure below to install DeskTopBinder Lite.

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the "Document Management Utility" CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch "Setup.exe", located on the CD-ROM root directory.

3. Click [DeskTopBinder Lite].

The [DeskTopBinder Lite] dialog box appears.

- 4. Click [DeskTopBinder Lite], and then click [OK].
- 5. Follow the instructions on the display to install DeskTopBinder Lite.

If you are required to restart the computer after installing DeskTopBinder Lite, restart the computer and continue the configuration.

## DeskTopBinder Lite enhancements

Follow the DeskTopBinder Lite enhancement procedure to print PDF files directly.

 On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], [DeskTopBinder], and then click [Extended Features Wizard].

The [Extended Features Wizard] dialog box appears.

- 2. Click [Start], and then click [Next>] repeatedly until the [Printing Function2] dialog box appears.
- In the [Printing Function2] dialog box, click [Add...].

The [PDF Direct Print Properties] dialog box appears.

4. Select the driver for this printer, and then click [OK].

The [PDF Direct Print Properties] dialog box closes.

- 5. Click [Next>] repeatedly until [Finish] appears.
- 6. Click [Finish].

#### **Function Palette**

The Function palette contains buttons for functions that are already configured through DeskTopBinder Lite enhancement. Using these buttons, you can print Windows files, preview printouts, convert images, and register scanners for documents without having to open DeskTopBinder Lite. You can also use these functions simply by dragging a target file to the button corresponding to the required function and dropping it there.

 On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], [DeskTopBinder], and then click [Function Palette].

An icon for the Function palette is added to the task tray displayed at the bottom right of the screen.

2. Right-click the new icon that has been added to the task tray, and then click [Properties...].

The [Properties] dialog box appears.

Click the [Contents] tab, select the [PDF Direct Print] check box at the center, and then click [OK].

The [Properties] screen closes and the [PDF Direct Print] icon is added to the palette.

#### **PDF Direct Printing**

Follow the procedure below to print PDF files directly.

 Drag the PDF file you want to print to the PDF Direct Printing icon on the Function Palette and drop it there.

The [Output File List-PDF Direct Print] dialog box appears.

2. Highlight the PDF file you want to print, and then click [OK].

The PDF file is printed.

#### **Printing PDF Password-Protected Documents**

Follow the procedure below to print password-protected PDF files.

 On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], [DeskTopBinder], and then click [Extended Features Wizard].

The [Extended Features Wizard] dialog box appears.

- Click [Start], and then click [Next>] repeatedly until the [Printing Function2] dialog box appears.
- 3. In the [Printing Function2] dialog box, click [Properties...].

The [PDF Direct Print Properties] dialog box appears.

- 4. Select the [Use PDF Password] check box at the bottom right of the dialog box, and then click [OK].
- 5. Click [Next>] repeatedly until [Finish] appears.
- 6. Click [Finish].

The [Extended Features Wizard] dialog box closes.

7. Drag the PDF file you want to print over the PDF Direct Printing icon on the Function Palette and drop it there.

The [Output File List - PDF Direct Print] dialog box appears.

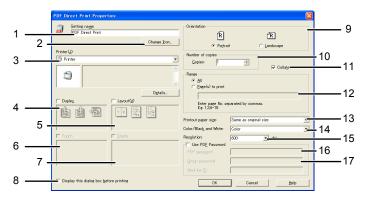
- 8. Click on the PDF file you want to print, making it appear highlighted, and then click [OK].
  The [PDF Direct Print Properties] dialog box appears.
- In the [PDF password:] box at the bottom right of the dialog box, enter the password for the PDF file you want to print, and then click [OK].

The password-protected PDF file is printed.



- Before printing a password-protected PDF file, perform one of the followings:
  - In the [PDF Direct Print Properties] dialog box, enter the password for the PDF file you want to print
  - Specify a password for the PDF file by selecting [Change PDF Password] in the [PDF Menu] on the printer's control panel.
- If a [PDF Group Password] for the [PDF Menu] has been specified using DeskTopBinder Lite or the
  printer's control panel, the same group password must be set on the other also.

# **PDF Direct Print Properties**



BAC010S

#### 1. Setting name:

Displays the plug-in configuration name (up to 63 single byte characters)

#### 2. Change Icon...

Changes the icon displayed on the tool bar.

#### 3. Printer:

Displays a list of RPCS drivers that support PDF direct printing.

#### 4. Duplex

Prints on both sides of sheets.

#### 5. Layout

Prints multiple pages on a single sheet.

#### 6. Punch (not available for this printer)

Punches holes in printed sheets.

#### 7. Staple (not available for this printer)

Staples together printed sheets.

#### 8. Display this dialog box before printing

Appears in PDF direct printing mode if this check box is selected.

#### 9. Orientation:

Specify the original's orientation.

#### 10. Number of copies

Specify the number of copies to print.

#### 11. Collate

Sorts printed sheets.

#### 12. Range:

Specify which paper to print.

#### 13. Printout paper size:

Specify the paper size you want copies to be printed onto.

#### 14. Color/Black and White:

Specify color or black-and-white printing.

#### 15. Resolution:

Specify a print resolution.

#### 16. PDF password:

Enter the password for password-protected PDF files. A password-protected PDF file cannot be printed unless its password is entered here.

#### 17. Group password:

If a group password is assigned to DeskTopBinder Lite and this printer, enter the group password in this field. The group password must be entered for printing to start.

# **Using Commands**

You can print PDF files directly, using commands such as "ftp", "sftp", and "lpr".

For details about UNIX commands, see UNIX Supplement.

# **Unauthorized Copy Control**

You can embed patterns and text under printed text to prevent unauthorized copying of the document. Unauthorized Copy Control consists of two functions: [Data security for copying] and [Mask type:].



• This function is designed to discourage copying of confidential documents; it does not prevent unauthorized use of information.

## Opening the Unauthorized Copy Control Window

- 1. In the RPCS printer driver, open the [Printing Preference] window.
- 2. Click [Add/Change Custom Settings...].
- 3. Select the [Unauthorized copy...] check box.
- 4. Click [Control Settings...].
  The [Unauthorized Copy Control] window appears.

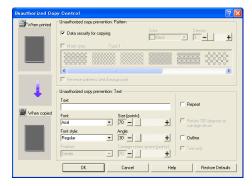


• For details, see the printer driver Help.

# Using [Data security for copying]

You can embed a print pattern by setting it in the printer driver.

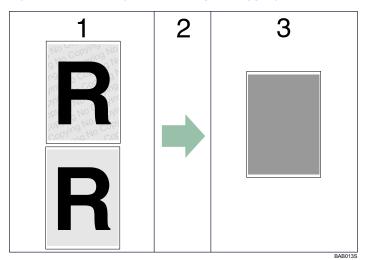
#### Setting [Data security for copying] in the printer driver



- Select the [Data security for copying] check box. You can also enter the text in the [Text:] box.
- You cannot select the [Mask type:] check box at the same time.
- To print a document protected by gray overprint, the machine must be set up correctly. Consult
  your administrator.

3

#### Printing a document using [Data security for copying]



- 1. The pattern and text you have set is printed.
- The document is copied or stored in copiers / multifunction machines which the optional Copy Data Security unit is installed.
- 3. The document is blanked by gray overprint.

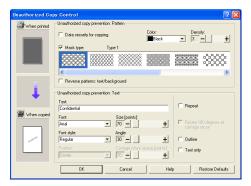


- When printing a document that is set with [Data security for copying], the machine does not require
  the optional Copy Data Security unit to be installed. The Copy Data Security unit is required when
  copying or storing a document protected by gray overprint.
- Only the RPCS printer driver is supported.
- Printing at 200 × 200 dpi is not possible.
- You cannot partially embed a pattern and text in a document.
- To make the embedded pattern clear, set the character size at least 50 pt (preferably 70 to 80 pt) and character angle to between 30 and 40 degrees.
- Use  $182 \times 257 \text{ mm} (7^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2} \text{ in.})$  or larger paper.
- Use ordinary or recycled paper of at least 70% whiteness.
- Duplex printing may interfere with this function as a result of text and patterns being visible through the paper.
- For details about setting [Data security for copying], see the printer driver Help.

# Using [Mask type:]

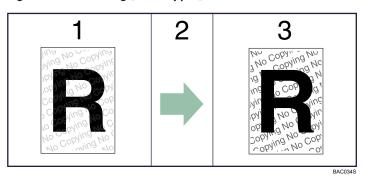
You can embed patterns and texts in a document by setting in the printer driver to prevent unauthorized copying.

#### Setting [Mask type:] in the printer driver



- Select a pattern from [Mask type:], and then enter texts in the [Text:] box.
- You can select overprint color from [Black], [Cyan], or [Magenta] in the [Color:] list.
- You can set only [Text:], but [Mask type:] and [Text:] must be set together.

#### Printing a document using [Mask type:]



- 1. The pattern and text you have set is printed palely.
- 2. The document is copied, scanned, or stored in copiers / multifunction machines.
- 3. The pattern and text you have set appear clearly.



- Only the RPCS printer driver is supported.
- Printing at 200 × 200 dpi is not possible.
- You cannot partially embed patterns and texts strings in a document.
- To make the embedded pattern clear, set the character size at least 50 pt (preferably 70 to 80 pt) and character angle to between 30 and 40 degrees.

3

- Due to the effects of the settings, the results of copying, scanning, and saving documents in the document server may vary depending on the machine model and setting conditions.
- Printing with background patterns and texts may be slower than normal printing.
- For details about setting [Mask type:], see the printer driver Help.

# Important Notice

- The supplier does not provide warranty regarding the appearance of print patterns and other copy
  protection features. The appearance of the print patterns and the performance of Unauthorized Copy
  Control may vary depending on the quality of paper used and the machine model and settings.
- The supplier takes no responsibility for any damages sustained in connection with use of or inability to make use of Unauthorized Copy Control print patterns.

# **Using the Print Job Function**

This describes how to print or delete files stored in the printer. There are following types of print files: Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print.

Print files sent from computers can be stored in the hard disk of the printer. Using the Print Job function, you can print or delete the print files.



• To use this function, the optional hard disk must be installed on the printer.

#### **Print Job Screen**

When the printer is turned on, the following screen appears if an optional hard disk is installed in the printer.



If you press [Prt.Jobs] on the initial screen, a screen prompting to select the type of print job appears.



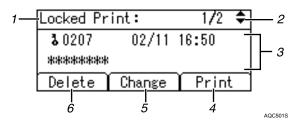
After selecting a type, you can select print files in the list by pressing:

- [Job List]
   Displays the Job List screen.
- [User ID]
  Displays the User ID screen.

If you select Sample Print, Locked Print, and Hold Print, the print files saved in the printer are deleted after printing is completed. If you select Stored Print, the files remain in the printer even after printing is finished.

3

#### Job List Screen



#### 1. The type of print jobs

Displays the type of the print job you select.

#### 2. Page number

Displays the current page number. Each time pressing the [▲] or [▼] key, the screen switches.

#### 3. User ID, Date/Time, and File Name display

- User ID shows the user's ID set by the printer driver.
- Date and Time show the time at which the print job was stored in the printer.
- File name shows the name of the file. However, "\*\*\*\*" is shown instead of the file name for a Locked Print file.

#### 4. [Print]

Prints a selected file.

#### 5. [Change]

Changes or clears the password of a file if a password is set. To change the password of a Locked/Stored Print job, press [Change], enter the current password, and then enter the new password on the confirmation screen. To clear the password, press [Change], leave the entering/confirming a new password box blank, and then press the [OK] key.

You can also set passwords to the Stored Print files that do not currently have passwords.

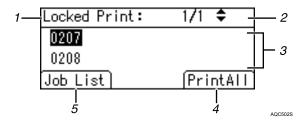
#### 6. [Delete]

Deletes a selected file.



- When you press [Change] to change or clear a password, you must first enter the existing password. If the password you entered is incorrect, you cannot change or clear any current passwords.
- You can use [Change] to set or clear passwords only when Stored Print files are stored in the printer.

#### **User ID Screen**



#### 1. The type of print jobs

Displays the type of the print job you select.

#### 2. Page number

Displays the current page number. Each time pressing the  $[ ^{\blacktriangle} ]$  or  $[ ^{\blacktriangledown} ]$  key, the screen switches.

#### 3. User ID

- User ID shows the ID of the user who stored the selected type of files.
- User ID set by the printer driver is shown.

#### 4. [PrintAll]

Prints all files stored by the user whose user ID has been selected.

#### 5. [Job List]

Switches the screen to the [Job List] screen.

Displays the print jobs of the selected user only.

#### **U** Note

- To cancel selecting a file, press the [Job Reset] key.
- The display is not updated if a new file is stored while the list of stored files is displayed. To update the display, press the [Menu] key to return to the initial screen, and then press [Prt.Jobs] again.
- If a large number of print jobs are stored in the printer, processing may slow temporarily, depending on which functions are used.

# Reference

- For details about printing each type of print job, see the followings:
- p.93 "Sample Print"
- p.96 "Locked Print"
- p.100 "Hold Print"
- p.103 "Stored Print"

# **Printing from the Print Job Screen**

This section gives instruction about Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print.

#### Sample Print

Use this function to print only the first set of a multiple-set print job. After you have checked the result, remaining sets can be printed or canceled using the printer's control panel. This can reduce misprints due to mistakes in content or settings.



- A Sample Print file cannot be stored if:
  - the optional hard disk is not installed in the printer.
  - the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
  - the file contains over 1,000 pages.
  - sent or stored files in the printer contain over 9,000 pages in total.



- If a Sample Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.
- Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents in the printer remain. However, the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] or [Auto Delete Stored Jobs] settings are applied first.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Sample Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected from the application's Print dialog box, more prints than intended may be produced.
- If the first set of the Sample Print files is not as you expected and you do not want to print remaining sets, delete the Sample Print file using the display panel. If you print the remaining sets of the Sample Print file, the job in the printer is deleted automatically.
- Sample Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select [Sample Print Jobs]
  using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if
  you try to print or delete those Sample Print files.
- If stored files have similar and long file names, recognizing the file you want to print on the display panel may be difficult. Print the file you want to print either by checking the user ID or the time the file is sent, or by changing the file name to something that can be recognized easily.
- For details about the error log on the display panel, see "Checking the Error Log".
- For details about the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] and [Auto Delete Stored Jobs], see "System Menu".

# Reference

• p.115 "Checking the Error Log"

p.167 "System Menu"

#### Printing a Sample Print File

The following procedure describes how to print a Sample Print file with the PCL 6/5c, RPCS and PostScript 3 printer driver.



- Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.
- 1. From an application, select a command to print.

The Print dialog box appears.

2. Select the printer you want to use in the [Name] list, and then click [Properties].

The printer properties dialog box appears.

3. In the [Job type:] box, click [Sample Print].

When printing with the PostScript 3 printer driver, click [Sample Print] in the [Job Type:] box on the [Job Log] tab.

4. In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric characters.

This is used to identify the user. The user ID can be entered using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

5. Click [Details...], and then enter a User ID in the [User ID:] box.

This is used to identify the user. The user ID can be entered using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

6. Execute a command to print.

Make sure to set more than two copies.

The Sample Print job is sent to the printer, and the first set is printed.

7. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].



Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Sample Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].



A list of Sample Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

You can print files also by pressing [User ID].

9. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to print, and then press [Print].

Sample Print:		1/3	#
0208	02/11	17:03	
Document			
Delete		Print	<u>E</u>

Enter the new number of sets using the scroll keys. You can enter up to 999 sets.

Press the [Escape] key to correct any entry mistakes.

#### 10. Press [Print].

The remaining sets are printed.

Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.



- When the number of set quantity is changed, the changed quantity is applied to all selected files.
- When printing is completed, the stored file will be deleted.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press the [Job Reset] key. The file will be deleted.
- For details about [User ID], see "Printing from the User ID Screen".

# Reference

• p.107 "Printing from the User ID Screen"

#### **Deleting Sample Print Files**

If you are not satisfied with the sample printout, you can delete the Sample Print file, revise it and print it again until the settings are suitable.

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Sample Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].



A list of Sample Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to delete, and then press [Delete].

Sample Print:		1/3	÷
0208	02/11	17:03	
Document			
Delete		Print	Ŀ

The delete confirmation screen will appear.

4. Press [Delete].

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press [Cancel].

#### **Locked Print**

Use this function to maintain privacy when printing confidential documents on the printer over a shared network. Usually, it is possible to print data using the display panel once it is stored in this printer. When using Locked Print, it is not possible to print unless a password is entered on the printer's display panel. Your confidential documents will be safe from being viewed by other people.



- A Locked Print file cannot be stored if:
  - the optional hard disk is not installed in the printer.
  - the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
  - the file contains over 1,000 pages.
  - sent or stored files in the printer contain over 9,000 pages in total.



• If a Locked Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.

- Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents remain. However, the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] or [Auto Delete Stored Jobs] settings are applied first.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. Locked
  Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver as default. If a collate option is selected in
  the application print dialog box, more sets than intended may be printed.
- After the Locked Print file is printed, the job is automatically deleted.
- Locked Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select [Locked Print Jobs]
  using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if
  you try to print or delete those Locked Print files.
- For details about the error log on the display panel, see "Checking the Error Log".
- For details about the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] and [Auto Delete Stored Jobs], see "System Menu".

## Reference

- p.115 "Checking the Error Log"
- p.167 "System Menu"

#### **Printing a Locked Print File**

The following procedure describes how to print a Locked Print file with the PCL 6/5c, RPCS or PostScript 3 printer driver.



- Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.
- Configure the Locked Print in the printer driver's properties.
   For details about configuring the printer drivers, see the corresponding Help files.
- 2. Start printing from the application's Print dialog box.

The Locked Print job is sent to the printer.

3. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].



4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Locked Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

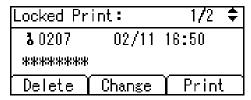


A list of Locked Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

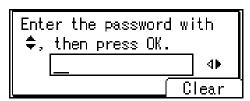
You can print files also by pressing [User ID].

5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to print, and then press [Print].



The password screen appears.

6. Enter the password using the [▲], [▼], [◄] or [▶] key, and then press the [OK] key.



The print confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press [Clear] to enter the password again.

If you forget your password, ask your network administrator for help.

7. Press [Print].

The remaining sets are printed.

Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.

**U**Note

- When printing is completed, the stored file will be deleted.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press the [Job Reset] key. The file will be deleted.
- For details about [User ID], see "Printing from the User ID Screen".

# Reference

• p.107 "Printing from the User ID Screen"

#### **Deleting Locked Print Files**

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].



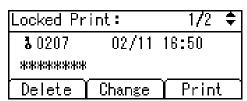
2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Locked Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].



A list of Locked Print files stored in the printer appears.

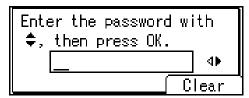
Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to delete, and then press [Delete].



The password screen appears.

**4.** Enter the password using the  $[^{\blacktriangle}]$ ,  $[^{\blacktriangledown}]$ ,  $[^{\blacktriangledown}]$  or  $[^{\blacktriangleright}]$  key, and then press the [OK] key.



The delete confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press [Clear] to enter the password again.

If you forget your password, ask your network administrator for help.

5. Press [Delete].

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press [Cancel].

#### **Hold Print**

Use this function to temporarily hold a file in the printer, and print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.



- A Hold Print file cannot be stored if:
  - the optional hard disk is not installed in the printer.
  - the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
  - the file contains over 1,000 pages.
  - sent or stored files in the printer contain over 9,000 pages in total.



- If a Hold Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.
- Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents in the printer remain. However, the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] or [Auto Delete Stored Jobs] settings are applied first.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. By
  default, Hold Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected
  from the application's Print dialog box, more prints than intended may be produced.
- Hold Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select [Hold Print Jobs] using
  the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try
  to print or delete those Hold Print files.
- If stored files have similar and long file names, recognizing the file you want to print on the display
  panel may be difficult. Print the file you want to print either by checking the user ID or the time the file
  is sent, or by changing the file name to something that can be recognized easily. If you enter the
  document name on the printer driver's [Details...], that name appears on the display panel.
- It is possible, but not required, to set a file name or a password to a Hold Print file.
- For details about the error log on the display panel, see "Checking the Error Log".
- For details about the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] and [Auto Delete Stored Jobs], see "System Menu".

# Reference

- p.115 "Checking the Error Log"
- p.167 "System Menu"

#### **Printing a Hold Print File**

The following procedure describes how to print a Hold Print file with the PCL 6/5c, RPCS or PostScript 3 printer driver.



- Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.
- 1. Configure Hold Print in the printer driver's properties.

For details about configuring the printer drivers, see the relevant Help files.

2. Click [Details...], and then enter a User ID in the [User ID:] box.

You can also set a file name. The file name you set will be displayed on the printer's Job List screen.

3. Start printing from the application's Print dialog box.

The Hold Print job is sent to the printer and stored.

4. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].



5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Hold Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

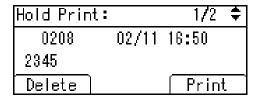


A list of Hold Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

You can print files also by pressing [User ID].

6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to print, and then press [Print].



The confirmation screen appears.

7. Press [Print].

The Hold Print file is printed.

Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.



- When printing is completed, the stored file will be deleted.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press the [Job Reset] key. The file will be deleted.
- For details about setting printer drivers, see the printer driver Help. You can also print or delete a Hold Print file from Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- For details about [User ID], see "Printing from the User ID Screen".

# ■ Reference

• p.107 "Printing from the User ID Screen"

#### **Deleting Hold Print Files**

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Hold Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].



A list of Hold Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to delete, and then press [Delete].

Hold Print:		1/2	÷
0208	02/11	16:50	
2345			
Delete		Print	

The confirmation screen appears.

#### 4. Press [Delete].

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press [Cancel].

#### **Stored Print**

Use this function to store a file in the printer, and then print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.

Jobs are not deleted after they are printed, so the same job need not be resent in order to print multiple copies.

# 

- · A Stored Print file cannot be stored if:
  - the optional hard disk is not installed in the printer.
  - the total number of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print files in the printer is over 100. (The maximum number varies depending on the volume of data in files.)
  - the file contains over 1,000 pages.
  - sent or stored files in the printer contain over 9,000 pages in total.

# **U** Note

- If a Stored Print file has not been stored properly, check the error log on the control panel.
- Even after you turn off the printer, stored documents in the printer remain. However, the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] or [Auto Delete Stored Jobs] settings are applied first.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure it is not selected before sending a print job. By
  default, Stored Print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If a collate option is selected
  from the application's Print dialog box, more prints than intended may be produced.
- Stored Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor, after you select [Stored Print Jobs]
  using the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if
  you try to print or delete those Stored Print files.
- If stored files have similar and long file names, recognizing the file you want to print on the display panel may be difficult. Print the file you want to print either by checking the user ID or the time the file is sent, or by changing the file name to something that can be recognized easily.
- If you enter the document name on the printer driver's [Details...], that name appears on the display panel.
- For details about the error log on the display panel, see "Checking the Error Log".
- For details about the [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs] and [Auto Delete Stored Jobs], see "System Menu".

# Reference

- p.115 "Checking the Error Log"
- p.167 "System Menu"

#### **Printing a Stored Print File**

The following procedure describes how to print a Stored Print file with the PCL 6/5c, RPCS or PostScript 3 printer driver.



- Applications with their own drivers, such as PageMaker, do not support this function.
- 1. Configure the Stored Print in the printer driver's properties.

You can select two ways for Stored Print:

• [Stored Print]

Stores the file in the printer and print it later using the control panel.

[Store and Normal Print] (or [Store and Print])
 Prints the file at once and also stores the file in the printer.

For details about configuring the printer drivers, see the relevant Help files.

2. Click [Details...], and then enter a User ID in the [User ID:] box.

You can also set a password. The same password must be entered when printing or deleting.

You can also set a file name. The file name you set will be displayed on the printer's Job List screen.

3. Start printing from the application's Print dialog box.

The Stored Print job is sent to the printer.

4. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].



Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Stored Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].



A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

You can print files also by pressing [User ID].

6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to print, and then press [Print].

Stored Print:		1/2	#
<b>3</b> 0207	02/11	16:51	
0055			
Delete	Change	Print	

The confirmation screen appears.

If you set a password in the printer driver, a password confirmation screen appears. Enter the password.

#### 7. Press [Print].

The Stored Print file is printed.

Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.



- When multiple files are selected without setting a quantity, one set less than the minimum number of all settings is applied. If the least number of settings is one set, all selected files will be printed at one set.
- When the number of set quantity is changed, the changed quantity is applied to all selected files.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press the [Job Reset] key. A Stored Print file is not deleted even if [Job Reset] is pressed.
- The Stored Print file that sent to the printer is not deleted unless you delete a file or select [Auto Delete Stored Jobs].
- You can set or delete a password after sending files to the printer. Select the file and press [Change]
  in the Print Job List screen. To set a password, enter the new password. To delete the password, leave
  the password box blank on entering or confirming the new password, and press the [OK] key.
- For details about setting printer drivers, see the printer driver Help. You can also print or delete a Stored Print file from Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- For details about the [Auto Delete Stored Jobs], see "System Menu".
- For details about [User ID], see "Printing from the User ID Screen".

# Reference

- p.167 "System Menu"
- p.107 "Printing from the User ID Screen"

# **Deleting Stored Print Files**

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Stored Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].



A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the file you want to delete, and then press [Delete].

Stored Print:		1/2	<b>‡</b>
<b>3</b> 0207	02/11	16:51	
0055			
Delete	Change	) Print	ŧ

The delete confirmation screen will appear.

If you set the password in the printer driver, enter the password to delete.

If you forget your password, ask your network administrator for help.

4. Press [Delete].

The selected file is deleted.

If you do not want to delete the file, press [Cancel].

3

# Printing from the User ID Screen

This describes how to print the files saved in the printer from the User ID screen.

# **Printing the Selected Print Job**



- If you print a Sample, Locked, or Hold Print file, the print file saved in the printer is deleted after printing is completed.
- 1. On the initial screen, press [Prt.Jobs].



2. Press [User ID].

<b>≣</b> Print Jobs	1/2 🕏
Sample Print	Jobs
Locked Print	Jobs
Job List	User ID

A list of user IDs whose files are stored in the printer appears.

Select the user ID whose file you want to print using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Job List].

Sample Print:	1/1 💠
0208	
5011	
Job List	PrintAll

The print job list of the selected user ID appears.

4. Select the file you want to print using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [Print].

Sample Pr	int:	1/1	<b>‡</b>
5011	02/11	17:02	
Document			
Delete		Prin	<u> </u>

The confirmation screen appears.

5. Press [Print].

The selected file is printed.

Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.

### Reference

- For details about printing each type of print job, see the followings:
- p.93 "Sample Print"
- p.96 "Locked Print"
- p.100 "Hold Print"
- p.103 "Stored Print"

### **Printing All Print Jobs**

1. On the initial screen, press [Prt.Jobs].

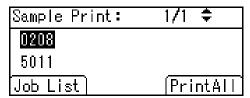


Select a type of print jobs you want to print using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [User ID].



A list of user IDs whose files are stored in the printer appears.

Select the user ID whose file you want to print using the [▲] or [▼] key, and then press [PrintAll].



The confirmation screen appears.

#### 4. Press [Print].

The selected files are printed.

To cancel printing, press [Cancel].

### UNote

- After printing is completed, Sample Print, Locked Print, and Hold Print files are deleted.
- You cannot select a print job that is not stored under the selected user ID.
- When printing multiple Sample Print files without specifying the number of sets on the confirmation screen, one set less than the least number of set specified on the computer is applied for every selected document. If the number of sets specified on the computer is "1", one set each is printed for every document.
- When printing multiple Stored Print files without specifying the number of sets on the confirmation screen, the least number of set specified on the computer is applied for every selected document.
- If you select [Locked Print Jobs], enter the correct password. If there are multiple passwords, the printer prints only files that correspond to the entered password.
- If you select Stored Print files, and some of these require a password, the printer prints files that correspond to the entered password and files that do not require a password.

### ■ Reference

- For details about printing each type of print job, see the followings:
- p.93 "Sample Print"
- p.96 "Locked Print"
- p.100 "Hold Print"
- p.103 "Stored Print"

# Form Feed

This section gives instructions for operating the printer when there is no tray for the selected paper size or type, or when paper loaded in the printer has run out.



- The tray cannot be changed if the following functions are set:
  - Duplex Print to a tray that does not support duplex printing
  - Cover Sheet
  - Slip Sheet



- If form feed is selected for a tray with the following settings, you can change the tray by canceling the settings:
  - Duplex Print
  - Staple
- If [Auto Continue] is selected, form fed paper is printed after a set interval. For details, see "System Menu".



p.167 "System Menu"

## **Printing from a Selected Tray**

If the printer does not have a tray for the selected paper size or paper type, or if the selected paper loaded in the printer has run out, a caution message appears. If this message appears, do the following procedure.

1. When the caution message appears, press [FormFeed].

Paper size/type mismatch. Change settings to: 8½×11□Plain/Recycled Change |JobReset|FormFeed

A confirmation message appears.

2. Press the [OK] key.

3. Select the tray for form feed using the [♠] or [▼] key from those that appear on the display panel, and then press the [OK] key.



The printer prints using the selected tray.



• If a tray with a smaller paper size is selected, the print job may be cut short, or other problems may occur.

#### **Canceling a Print Job**

Follow this procedure for canceling the print job if the message prompting form feed appears.

1. Press [JobReset].

```
Paper size/type mismatch.
Change settings to:
8½×11 □Plain/Recycled
Change | JobReset|FormFeed
```

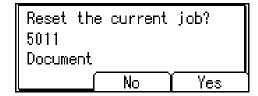
2. Press [Current].



The confirmation message appears.

To resume printing jobs, press [Resume].

3. Press [Yes] to cancel the print job.



Press [No] to return to the previous display.



- If the printer is shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.
- Under Windows, If the printer is connected to the computer using a parallel cable, sent print jobs may
  be canceled if [JobReset] is pressed while "Waiting for print data..." is displayed on the control panel.
  After the interval set in [I/O Timeout] in Printer Features has passed, the next print job can be sent. A
  print job sent from a different client computer will not be canceled in this case.
- You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue for a few pages after you press [JobReset].
- A print job containing a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.
- To stop data printing, see "Canceling a Print Job".

### Reference

• p.113 "Canceling a Print Job"

# Canceling a Print Job

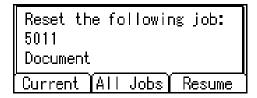
You can cancel printing from either the printer or a client computer. Since canceling procedures vary depending on the print job status, check the job status and cancel printing according to the following procedure.

### Canceling a Print Job Using the Control Panel

1. Press [JobReset].

A confirmation message appears.

2. Press [Current].



To resume printing jobs, press [Resume].

3. Press [Yes] to cancel the print job.

```
Reset the current job?
5011
Document
No Yes
```

Press [No] to return to the previous display.

### Windows - Canceling a Print Job from the computer

You can cancel a print job from the computer if transferring print jobs is not completed.

1. Double-click the printer icon on the Windows task tray.

A window appears, showing all print jobs currently queued for printing. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

- 2. Select the name of the job you want to cancel.
- 3. On the [Document] menu, click [Cancel Printing].



- If the printer is shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.
- If the printer is connected to the computer using a parallel cable, sent print jobs may be canceled if
  [JobReset] is pressed while "Waiting for print data..." is displayed on the control panel. After the
  interval set in [I/O Timeout] in Printer Features has passed, the next print job can be sent. A print job
  sent from a different client computer will not be canceled in this case.
- You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue for a few pages after you press [JobReset].
- A print job containing a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

### Mac OS - Canceling a Print Job from the computer

1. Double-click the printer icon on the desktop.

A window appears showing all print jobs that are currently queuing to be printed. Check the current status of the job you want to cancel.

Under Mac OS X, start Print Center.

- 2. Select the name of the job you want to cancel.
- 3. Click the pause icon, and then click the trash icon.



- If the printer is shared by multiple computers, be careful not to accidentally cancel someone else's print job.
- If the printer is connected to the computer using a parallel cable, sent print jobs may be canceled if
  [JobReset] is pressed while "Waiting for print data..." is displayed on the control panel. After the
  interval set in [I/O Timeout] in Printer Features has passed, the next print job can be sent. A print job
  sent from a different client computer will not be canceled in this case.
- You cannot stop printing data that has already been processed. For this reason, printing may continue
  for a few pages after you press [JobReset].
- A print job containing a large volume of data may take considerable time to stop.

# **Checking the Error Log**

If files could not be stored due to printing errors, identify the cause of the errors by checking the error log on the control panel.



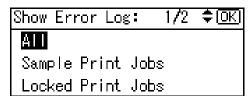
- The most recent 30 errors are stored in the error log. If a new error is added when there are 30 errors already stored, the oldest error is deleted. However, if the oldest error belongs to one of the following print jobs, it is not deleted. The error is stored separately until the number of those errors reaches 30. You can check any of these print jobs for error log information.
  - Sample Print
  - Locked Print
  - Hold Print
  - Stored Print
- If the main power switch is turned off, the log is deleted.
- 1. Press [Option].



2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Error Log], and then press the [OK] key.



Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select a type of print jobs, and then press the [OK] key.
 If you select [All], all error logs appears.





- Press the [Menu] key until the initial screen appears after checking the log.
- To print files that appear in the error log, resend them after stored files have been printed or deleted.

# **Collate**

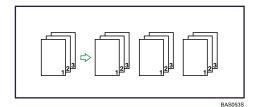
The Collate function allows you to print while sorting printouts into page-ordered sets, such as when printing multiple copies of meeting materials.



- To use these functions, an optional memory unit of at least 256 MB or the optional hard disk drive must be installed on the printer.
- Up to 150 pages can be sorted using RAM. If the optional hard disk drive is installed, up to 1,000 pages can be sorted.

#### Collete

Output can be assembled as sets in sequential order.





- If Auto Continue occurs on the first set, Collate will be canceled.
- If forced printing occurs on the first set, Collate will be canceled.
- When setting Collate in the printer driver settings, make sure that a collate option is not selected in the application's print settings. If a collate option is selected, printing will not be as intended.
- For details about printing method, see the printer driver Help.

# **Spool Printing**

With Spool Printing, the print data is saved in the hard disk before printing. To use this function, set it from the menu. See "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

### Mportant ...

- To use this function, the optional hard disk must be installed on the printer.
- Use the "spoolsw clear job" telnet command to clear a spooled print job. Do not turn off the printer
  or computer while a print job is being spooled and the Data In is flashing. Print jobs that are interrupted
  in this way remain on the printer's hard disk and will finish printing out when the printer is turned back
  on.
- The Spool Printing function is available for data received using "diprint", "lpr", "ipp", "ftp", "sftp", "smb", and "ws-printer".
- When using "diprint", the Spool Printing function cannot be used with bidirectional communication.
- The domain reserved for spool printing is about 1 GB.
- When Spool Printing is on, the size of a single print job cannot exceed 500 MB.
- When receiving jobs from multiple computers, the printer can spool a maximum of ten "lpr" jobs, and
  only one "diprint", "ipp", "ftp", "sftp", or "smb" job. If the printer's spooling capacity is exceeded,
  newer jobs cannot be printed. You must wait before sending further jobs.

### Note

- Printing the first page with Spool Printing will be slow.
- The computer requires less print processing time when large amounts of data are spooled.
- Stored spool jobs can be viewed or deleted using Web Image Monitor.
- The list of spool jobs cannot be viewed from the printer's control panel.
- For information about the "spoolsw clear job" command on the telnet, see "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

### Reference

• p.227 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

### **Setting Spool Printing**

Spool printing settings can be made using telnet or Web Image Monitor.

- Using Web Image Monitor
   In [System] on the [Configuration] menu, click [Active] in [Spool Printing].
- Using telnet
   Enter "spoolsw spool on".



- For details about Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- For details about "spoolsw spool on", see "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

### Reference

• p.227 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

### Viewing or Deleting Spooled Jobs Using Web Image Monitor

Follow the procedure below to check or delete spooled jobs using Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Open a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(printer's address)/" in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The window for entering the login user name and password appears.

4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

Contact your administrator for information about the settings.

5. In the menu area, click [Job].

A submenu will appear.

6. On the [Printer] menu, click [Spool Printing].

A list of spooled jobs appears.

- 7. To delete a job, select the check box of the job you want to delete, and then click [Delete].
  The selected job is deleted.
- 8. Click [Logout].
- 9. Quit Web Image Monitor.



• For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

# Cover

Using this function, you can insert cover and back sheets fed from a different tray to that of the main paper, and print on them.



• To use this function, Collate must be set.



- The cover sheets should be the same size and orientation as the body of the paper.
- If Auto Tray Select is set for the body paper feed tray, body paper will be delivered from a tray that contains paper set in portrait orientation. Therefore, if the cover paper is set to landscape orientation, the orientation of the cover and body paper will be different.
- For printing methods, see the printer driver Help.

# **Using the Virtual Printer**

This section explains the virtual printer function.

A virtual printer is a pseudo printer that can only be recognized on a network. The virtual printer has various print options, such as feeding tray selection and duplex printing, which you can set in advance. You can also use the interrupt printing function. This function suspends the ongoing job and gives priority to a new job. The optional hard disk must be installed to use this function.

If you use the virtual printer under UNIX, Solaris, and other operating systems, various print functions are possible without having you manually enter usual print commands.

#### Adding a Virtual Printer

Use this procedure to add a virtual printer.



- Adding a virtual printer requires Administrators privilege. Log on using an account that has Administrators privilege.
- The following Virtual Printer protocols are available: "TCP/IP (Unspecified, Normal)", "TCP/IP (DIPRINT)", "TCP/IP (RHPP)", "AppleTalk", and "NetWare".
- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor as an administrator.
  - For details about login user names and passwords, see p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor".
- In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [Virtual Printer Settings] in the "Printer" category.

A list of the available virtual printers appears.

3. Click [Add].

The screen for adding virtual printers appears.

- 4. In [Virtual Printer Name], enter a name for the new printer, and then select the protocol in the [Protocol] list.
- 5. Click [OK].

The virtual printer is added.



- If you select [AppleTalk] or [NetWare] in the [Protocol] list, you cannot specify a virtual printer name.
- You can specify a virtual printer name using up to 47 characters.
- You can add up to 50 virtual printers. After 50 virtual printers have been added, [Add] will no longer be displayed.

### **Changing a Virtual Printer Configuration**

Use this procedure to change a virtual printer configuration.



- You must have Administrators privilege to change the configuration of a virtual printer. Log on using an account that has Administrators privilege.
- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor as an administrator.

For details about login user names and passwords, see p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor".

2. In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [Virtual Printer Settings] in the "Printer" category.

A list of the available virtual printers appears.

- 3. Select the virtual printer whose configuration you want to change, and then click [Change].
  If you want to configure this virtual printer for an interrupt printer, select [TCP/IP (Unspecified, Priority)] in the protocol list.
- 4. Change the configuration as required.
- 5. Click [OK].



• For details about virtual printer configuration, see Web Image Monitor Help.

### Confirming a Virtual Printer Configuration

Use this procedure to confirm a virtual printer configuration.

1. Start Web Image Monitor.

For details about login user names and passwords, see p. 195 "Using Web Image Monitor".

2. In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [Virtual Printer Settings] in the "Printer" category.

A list of available virtual printers appears.

Select the virtual printer whose configuration details you want to confirm, and then click [Details].

A configuration list for the selected virtual printer appears.



• [Details] is not displayed if you log on to Web Image Monitor as an administrator. To confirm a virtual printer configuration, click [Change].

• If the virtual printers function is disabled, the list of available virtual printers is not displayed. For details about enabling the virtual printers function, see Web Image Monitor Help.

#### **Deleting a Virtual Printer**

Use this procedure to delete a virtual printer.



- You must have Administrators privilege to delete a virtual printer. Log on using an account that has Administrators privilege.
- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor as an administrator.

For details about login user names and passwords, see p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor".

2. In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [Virtual Printer Settings] in the "Printer" category.

The list of available virtual printers appears.

- 3. Select the virtual printer that you want to delete, and then click [Delete].
  - The delete confirmation screen appears.
- 4. Click [OK].



- You cannot delete this printer's default virtual printer.
- [Delete] appears only if you have already added a virtual printer.

### **Printing Using a Virtual Printer**

To print directly from a specified virtual printer, assign the virtual printer in the print command. If you use the interrupt printing function, enter the name of the virtual printer that you configured for interrupt printing. Before printing for the first time, specify the virtual printer you want to use.

- Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
   For details about login user name and password, see p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor".
- 2. In the menu area, click [Configuration], and then click [Basic Settings] in the "Printer" category.
- 3. Select [Active] in [Virtual Printer], and then click [OK].
- 4. Send a command from your computer.

lpr

C:\>lpr -S "printer's IP address" [-PVirtual Printer Name] [-ol] \path name\file
name

rcp

c:> rcp [-b] \path name\file name [\path name\file name...] printer's host name:
["Virtual Printer Name"]

ftp

ftp> put \path name\ file name [Virtual Printer Name]



- When the ongoing job meets any of the following conditions, interrupt printing is not possible even if
  you print with the virtual printer that is configured for interrupt printing. The printer waits to print a new
  job until it finishes printing the current job.
  - When the staple function is specified for the ongoing print jog
  - When the ongoing print job is performed using the bypass tray
  - · When a function related to cover or slip paper is specified for the ongoing print job
- If a large amount of memory is used for the ongoing print job or a large number of sheets are being
  printed, there may not be enough memory to process an interrupt print job, or only part of the interrupt
  job may be printed. If this happens, certain functions for the interrupt job, such as stapling or storing
  data onto the printer, can be canceled or sheets can be sorted in a number smaller than the standard
  maximum capacity.

# 4. Using Paper Types that have Unique Names

This chapter explains how to register User Paper Types and use them for print jobs.

# From Registration of User Paper Types to Use

This section explains the procedures for selecting the paper type according to usage, registering the paper type under a unique name, and printing a file using the registered paper type.



- This function can be used
  - when the machine is operating in a network,
  - in conjunction with the RPCS printer driver, and
  - under Windows 2000 or higher (under earlier systems, registered paper types appear as [Plain] in the printer driver).
- This function cannot be used
  - with the printer driver's [Save/Restore Settings] function (registered paper types appear as [Plain] in the printer driver) and
  - if the machine and computer are not using bi-directional communication.
- Also, be aware that
  - the printer driver might not display the paper type name correctly if it is registered using an unsupported language,
  - the control panel might not display the paper type name correctly if it is registered using nonalphanumeric characters (i.e., other than a-z, A-Z, or 0-9), and
  - the machine's logs do not record names of user paper types.

The example below explains setting a custom size paper under the name "Invoice A" and feeding it from a bypass tray.

- 1. Using Web Image Monitor, register the name under [User Paper Type].
  - Enter "Invoice A" for [Paper Name] and select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type].
  - When printing a file, the paper type is automatically set by selecting [User Paper Types] on the
    printer driver setting screen.
  - For details about this procedure, see p.127 "Registering Names to Paper Types".
- 2. In Web Image Monitor, set [User Paper Type] for the bypass tray.
  - Set [Paper Type] for the tray to "Invoice A".
  - For details about this procedure, see p.128 "Setting User Paper Types to Trays".

- 3. Load the paper you want to use on the bypass tray.
  - Set an unprinted paper on the bypass tray.
  - For details about this procedure, see "Loading Paper", Hardware Guide.
- 4. Using RPCS Printer Driver, print a document on the registered custom size paper.
  - Select [Invoice A] for [Paper type:], then proceed with the printing. When [Paper type:] is set to
    [Invoice A], Plain paper that is suitable for "Invoice A" is selected automatically. Registering a
    descriptive name makes selecting a paper type from the [Paper type:] list easier.
  - For details about this procedure, see p.129 "Printing Using Registered Paper Types".



• You can register up to eight user paper types.

# **Registering Names to Paper Types**

Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.



- The control panel might not display the paper type name correctly if it is registered using non-alphanumeric characters (i.e., other than a-z, A-Z, or 0-9).
- 1. Start your Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(printer's IP address)/" in the address bar of the Web browser.

The Top of Web Image Monitor appears.

If the printer's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, you can enter it in the address bar.

If SSL (encrypted HTTP) is running in a server authentication environment, enter "https://(printer's address)".

3. On the Top Page, click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

4. Enter your login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your administrator.

- 5. In the menu area, click [Configuration].
- On the [Device Settings], click [User Paper Type], and then change the settings as necessary.

The screen for selecting [User Paper Type] appears.

7. Make changes to the following settings:

Paper Name: Enter a descriptive name for easier recognition.

Paper Type: Select a suitable paper type from the list.

The example below is for printing invoices.

- Enter "Invoice A" for [Paper Name].
- Select [Plain Paper] for [Paper Type]. If the setting is incorrect, the paper might become jammed or print quality could be affected.
- For details about combinations of paper sizes types, paper type, see "Types of Paper and Other Media", Hardware Guide.
- 8. Click [OK].



• You can register up to eight user paper types.

Before printing, set the paper registered on the user paper type to the paper tray, and then set the paper type already registered. Paper types can be set either from Web Image Monitor or from the printer's control panel.

- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- 2. In the menu area, click [Configuration].
- 3. On the [Device Settings], click [Paper].
- 4. Set the paper tray you want to use as a user paper type, and then select the registered paper type.

The example below is for printing invoices.

The registered paper type "Invoice A" is displayed as [+ Invoice A (Custom x)] on this screen. Select [+ Invoice A (Custom x)] for [User Paper Type]. Make the appropriate changes to other settings as required.

- 5. Click [OK].
- 6. Click [Logout].
- 7. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- For details about loading paper, see "Loading Paper", Hardware Guide.
- For details about setting the paper type from control panel, see "Specifying a paper type for standard tray and the paper feed unit" and "Specifying a paper type for the bypass tray", Hardware Guide.

# **Printing Using Registered Paper Types**

Select a registered paper type to print onto.



- This function can be used when the machine is operating in a network, in conjunction with the RPCS printer driver, and under Windows 2000 or higher (under earlier systems, registered paper types appear as [Plain] in the printer driver).
- This function cannot be used with the printer driver's [Save/Restore Settings] function (registered paper types appear as [Plain] in the printer driver) and if the machine and computer are not using bidirectional communication.
- Also, be aware that the printer driver might not display the paper type name correctly if it is registered using an unsupported language, the control panel might not display the paper type name correctly if it is registered using non-alphanumeric characters (i.e., other than a-z, A-Z, or 0-9), and the machine's logs do not record names of user paper types
- 1. Select your application's print command.
- 2. On the tab in the properties dialog box that appears, select a registered paper type under [Paper type:].

If you select Custom Setting, click the [Print Settings] tab.

3. Execute the print command.

The preregistered settings are applied and print is performed.



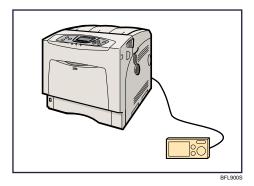
• For details about printer driver settings, see the printer driver Help.

# Direct Printing from a Digital Camera (PictBridge)

This chapter explains how to print directly from a digital camera.

# What is PictBridge?

You can connect a PictBridge-compatible digital camera to this machine using a USB cable. This allows you to print photographs taken using the digital camera directly by operating the digital camera.





- Check your digital camera is PictBridge-compatible.
- Up to 999 images can be sent from the digital camera to the machine during one print transaction.

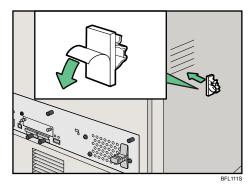
  If an attempt is made to send more images, an error message is sent to the camera and printing fails.
- Since printing conditions are specified on the digital camera, specifiable parameters depend on the particular digital camera. For details, see your digital camera's manual.
- This function is compatible with USB 1.1.

# **PictBridge Printing**

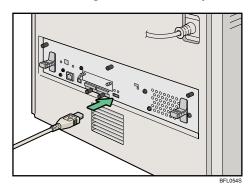
The following describes how to connect the printer to a digital camera.

### 

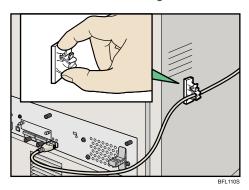
- This function requires the Camera direct print card.
- The Camera direct print card is supplied with a hook onto which you can hang the cable.
- Make sure your digital camera supports PictBridge.
- Use the USB cable bundled to your digital camera.
- · Do not disconnect the USB cable while data is being sent. If you do, printing will fail.
- 1. Confirm that the printer and digital camera are turned on.
- Attach the hook on the back of the printer near the USB connection slot.Attach the hook where it will not interfere with printer operation and access.



- 3. Check the printer and the digital camera are both switched on.
- 4. Connect the digital camera to the printer.



#### 5. Secure the USB cable using the hook.



- 6. Connect the other connector of the USB cable to the digital camera.
- 7. On your digital camera, select the images you want to print, and specify the printing conditions.

The machine receives settings from the digital camera and starts printing.



- Since printing conditions are specified on the digital camera, specifiable meters depend on the particular digital camera. For details, see your digital camera's manual.
- Some digital cameras require settings for manual PictBridge operation. For details, see your digital camera's manual.

# vvne

# What Can be Done on This Printer

This printer can perform the following functions using its PictBridge feature.

The settings available for these functions are as follows:

- Single image printing
- Selected image printing
- All image printing
- Index printing
- Trimming
- Date and file name printing
- Paper size
- Image print size
- Multi-Image-Layout
- Duplex printing
- Printing quality
- · Color matching
- Paper type specification
- Form printing
- Toner saving
- · Camera memo printing



- This printer does not support the following settings:
  - DPOF printing
  - · Margin-less printing
- The setting parameters and their names may vary depending on the digital camera. For details, see your digital camera's manual.

#### **Index Printing**

#### A4 (210 × 297 mm)

Horizontal images × Vertical images (in)	Paper orientation
8 × 12	D

Horizontal images × Vertical images (in)	Paper orientation
12 × 8	₽

### A5 (148 × 210 mm)

Horizontal images × Vertical images (in)	Paper orientation
5 × 8	D
8 × 5	D

### Letter (8 $^1/_2$ " $\times$ 11 ")

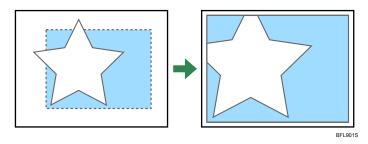
Horizontal images × Vertical images (in)	Paper orientation
8 × 10	D
10 × 8	D



- Index printouts vary depending on the orientation of the paper placed on the specified size tray.
- Depending on the digital camera, a form feed may be inserted after one set of images belonging to one type ends.
- The number of images in each size of paper is fixed.

### **Trimming**

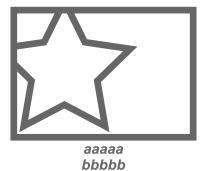
Use this function to print only inside of the trimming area specified on the digital camera.



\*1 -- Trimming area

### **Date and File Name Printing**

Use this function to print the date and/or file name under the image.



BFL902S

In the above figure, "aaaaa" indicates the file name and "bbbb" indicates the date.

### **Paper Size**

Use this function to print on paper with the size specified on the digital camera.

Paper size name	Actual size
Postcard	148 mm × 100 mm
Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11 ")	279.4 mm × 216 mm (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> × 11)
A4	297 mm × 210 mm
A5	210 mm × 148 mm
A6	148 mm × 105 mm
B5	257 mm × 182 mm
В6	182 mm × 128 mm

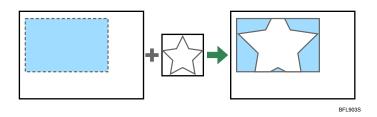


- Specify Undefined Size for the A6, B5, and B6 sizes.
- For details about specifying undefined sizes, see Hardware Guide.

### **Image Print Size**

Use this function to print images with the size specified on the digital camera.





- - indicates the image size specified on the camera.

You can specify the following image print sizes:

#### Fixed size

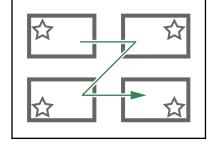
- 3.25 " × 2.5 "
- 5"×3.5"
- 6"×4"
- 7"×5"
- 10"×8"
- 254 mm × 178 mm
- 110 mm × 74 mm
- 89 mm × 55 mm
- 148 mm × 100 mm
- 8 cm × 6 cm
- 10 cm × 7 cm
- 13 cm × 9 cm
- 15 cm × 10 cm
- 18 cm × 13 cm
- 21 cm × 15 cm
- 24 cm × 18 cm



• An error occurs if the specified size is larger than the actual paper size.

# Multi-Image-Layout

Use this function to print multiple images on the specified paper.



BFL904S

The number of images that can be printed on one page are as follows:

Paper size	Number of images that can be specified
Postcard	2, 4
Letter (8 <sup>1</sup> / <sub>2</sub> " × 11")	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32
A4	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25, 32
A5	2, 4, 8, 9, 16
A6	2, 4, 8
B5	2, 4, 8, 9, 16, 25
В6	2, 4, 8, 9

The number and arrangement of images that can be specified are as follows:

Number of images	Vertical images × Horizontal images	Paper orientation
2	2 × 1	D
4	2 × 2	□ □
8	4 × 2	D
9	3 × 3	D-
16	4 × 4	D-
25	5 × 5	D.
32	8 × 4	D



- A form feed may be inserted between images depending on the digital camera in use.
- Printing in the specified way may not be possible depending on the specification for the number of images to be printed.

#### **Duplex Printing**

Use this function to enable duplex (double-sided) printing.

Duplex printing is disabled by default. When duplex printing is enabled, the printed pages open to the left. You cannot change the opening direction to the right.



 Duplex printing might not be possible, depending on the paper type or the tray that the paper is being fed from.

### **Printing Quality**

Use this function to print images at the selected printing quality.

If you select [Default] or [Normal], the machine prints at 600 dpi  $\times$  600 dpi (2 bit); if you select [Fine], the machine prints at 600 dpi  $\times$  600 dpi (4 bit).

### **Color Matching**

Use this function to optimize colors when printing images.

If you select [Default] or [OFF], the machine prioritizes gradation for color matching, if you select [ON], the machine prioritizes saturation.

# **Paper Type Specification**

This function sends the printer's paper type information to the digital camera. The names of paper types displayed on the digital camera's screen are different to the names displayed on the printer. Use the table below to match the paper types.

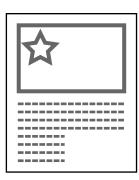
To display a paper type name on the digital camera's screen, use the printer's control panel to set the paper type of the printer correctly.

Paper type detected by the digital camera	Paper type of the printer
Default	All Paper types

Paper type detected by the digital camera	Paper type of the printer
Plain Paper	Plain or recycled paper
Photo Paper	HG plain paper or inkjet postcard
Fast Photo Paper	Glazed paper

### Form Printing

Use this function to print images in a predetermined layout format.



BFL905S

# **Toner Saving**

By specifying the print density on the digital camera, you can save on toner when printing.

Specification on the digital camera	Print density
Default/OFF	100%
Slightly light	75%
Light	50%

# Camera Memo Printing

Use this function to print text data together with an image if it is attached to the image.

# **Exiting PictBridge**

Follow the procedure below to quit the PictBridge mode.

- Do not disconnect the USB cable while data is being sent to the printer. If you do, printing will fail.
- 1. Check the control panel of this printer is displaying the "Ready" state.
- 2. Disconnect the USB cable from the printer.

# When PictBridge Printing Does Not Work

This section explains likely causes and possible solutions for problems that can occur when PictBridge printing.

Problem	Cause	Solution
PictBridge is not available.	There is a problem with the USB connection or the PictBridge settings.	Use the following procedure to check the connection and settings:
		Disconnect and then reconnect the USB cable.
		Check the PictBridge settings are enabled.
		3. Disconnect the USB cable, and then turn off the printer. Turn the printer back on. When the printer has fully booted up, reconnect the USB cable.
When two or more digital cameras are connected, the second and subsequent cameras are not recognized.	You have connected multiple digital cameras.	Connect one digital camera only.  Do not connect multiple cameras.
Printing is disabled.	The number of originals exceeds the maximum number of pages that can be printed at a time.	The maximum specifiable print quantity at a time is 999. Respecify the quantity to 999 or less, and then retry printing.
Printing is disabled.	There is no paper of the specified size remaining.	There is no paper of the specified size remaining.
		If you have to use paper that is not of the specified size, perform Form Feed. To cancel printing, perform Job Cancel.
Printing is disabled.	The paper size setting for this tray cannot be printed on the printer.	Select the paper size setting that can be printed on the printer.

# **Other Reference Information**

For further details about printing on this printer, see the following:



• For details about paper size, paper type, or tray settings, see Hardware Guide.

# 6. Making Printer Settings Using the Control Panel

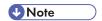
This chapter explains the menu displayed on the control panel and how to change the printer's settings.

### Menu Chart

This section explains how to change the default settings of the printer and provides information about the parameters included in each menu.

### **Memory Erase Status**

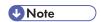
Displays data status inside the memory.



• This menu can be selected only when the optional data overwrite security unit is installed.

### **Paper Input**

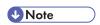
Menu
Paper Size: Bypass Tray
Paper Size: Tray 1
Paper Size: Tray 2
Paper Size: Tray 3
Paper Size: Tray 4
Paper Type: Bypass Tray
Paper Type: Tray 1
Paper Type: Tray 2
Paper Type: Tray 3
Paper Type: Tray 4
Duplex Tray
Auto Tray Select
Tray Priority



• Only installed trays appear on the display.

### Maintenance

Menu
Quality Maintenance
General Settings
Timer Settings
HD Management



• [HD Management] appears when the optional hard disk is installed.

### List/Test Print

Menu
Multiple Lists
Config. Page
Error Log
Network Summary
Supply Info List
Menu List
Colour Demo Page
PCL Config./Font Page
PS Config./Font Page
PDF Config./Font Page
Hex Dump

### System

Menu
Print Error Report
Auto Continue
Memory Overflow
Printer Language
Sub Paper Size
Default Printer Lang.
Energy Saver
Memory Usage
B&W Page Detect
Spool Printing
RAM Disk
Auto Email Notify



- [Spool Printing] appears when the optional hard disk is installed.
- [RAM Disk] appears when the optional hard disk is not installed.

### **Print Settings**

Menu
Machine Modes
PCL Menu
PS Menu
PDF Menu

### **Security Options**

Menu
Extend Auth. Management
Extended Security
Service Mode Lock
Firmware Version
Network Security Level
Auto Erase Memory Setting
Erase All Memory
Transfer Log Setting
Machine Data Encryption



- [Service Mode Lock] may not appear depending on the setting of the printer.
- [Auto Erase Memory Setting] and [Erase All Memory] appears when the optional data overwrite security unit is installed.
- [Machine Data Encryption] appears when the optional HDD encryption unit is installed.

### **Host Interface**

Menu
I/O Buffer
I/O Timeout
Network
Parallel Interface
Wireless LAN
USB Setting



- [Parallel Interface] appears when the optional IEEE 1284 interface board is installed.
- [Wireless LAN] appears when the optional wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

### Shutdown

Prepare the printer for power off. To prevent loss of stored data, be sure to shutdown the printer properly before turning off the power switch.



• For details, see "Turning Off the Power", Hardware Guide.

### Language

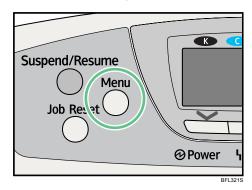
Menu
English
German
French
Italian
Dutch
Swedish
Norwegian
Danish
Spanish
Finnish
Portuguese
Czech
Polish
Hungarian
Russian

# **Memory Erase Status Menu**

Displays data status inside the memory.



- This menu appears only when the optional data overwrite security unit is installed.
- 1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the  $[^{\blacktriangle}]$  or  $[^{\blacktriangledown}]$  key to select [Memory Erase Status], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Displays [Data to erase remaining.] if there is data remaining inside the memory, displays [Currently no data to erase.] if there is no data inside the memory, and displays [Erasing Data...] when the data is being deleted.
- 4. Press the [OK] key.

The menu screen appears.

5. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

## Paper Input Menu

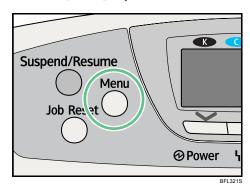
This section explains about paper settings on the Paper Input menu such as paper sizes and types on each tray.

### Changing the Paper Input Menu

### **Automatic Tray Selection**

Follow the procedure below to change the automatic tray selection setting.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



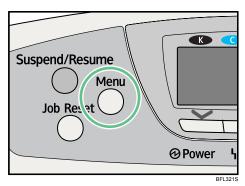
The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Paper Input], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Auto Tray Select], and then press the [OK] key.
- 4. Press the [♠] or [♥] key to select the tray you want to select, and then press the [OK] key.
- 5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [On], and then press the [OK] key.
  - Wait for one second. The [Auto Tray Select] screen appears.
- 6. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

### **Tray Priority**

Follow the procedure below to change the tray priority.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Paper Input], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Tray Priority], and then press the [OK] key.
- 4. Press the [<sup>▲</sup>] or [<sup>▼</sup>] key to select a tray you want to use, and then press the [OK] key.
  Wait for one second. The [Paper Input] screen appears.
- 5. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

### Paper Input Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Paper Input menu.

### Paper Size: Bypass Tray

You can specify the paper size for Bypass Tray.

### 220-240V

A4 $\mathbb{D}$ , A5 $\mathbb{D}$ , A6 $\mathbb{D}$ , B5 JIS $\mathbb{D}$ , B6 JIS $\mathbb{D}$ , C5 Env. $\mathbb{D}$ , C6 Env. $\mathbb{D}$ , DL Env. $\mathbb{D}$ , 81/2 × 14 $\mathbb{D}$ , 81/2 × 13 $\mathbb{D}$ , 81/2 × 11 $\mathbb{D}$ , 81/4 × 13 $\mathbb{D}$ , 8 × 13 $\mathbb{D}$ , 71/4 × 101/2 $\mathbb{D}$ , 51/2 × 81/2 $\mathbb{D}$ , 41/8 × 91/2 $\mathbb{D}$ , 37/8 × 71/2 $\mathbb{D}$ , 16K $\mathbb{D}$ , Custom Size

### 120V

81/2 × 14 $\overline{D}$ , 81/2 × 13 $\overline{D}$ , 81/<sub>2</sub> × 11 $\overline{D}$ , 81/<sub>4</sub> × 13 $\overline{D}$ , 8 × 13 $\overline{D}$ , 71/<sub>4</sub> × 101/<sub>2</sub> $\overline{D}$ , 51/<sub>2</sub> × 81/<sub>2</sub>  $\overline{D}$ , 41/<sub>8</sub> × 91/<sub>2</sub> $\overline{D}$ , 37/<sub>8</sub> × 71/<sub>2</sub> $\overline{D}$ , A4 $\overline{D}$ , A5 $\overline{D}$ , A6 $\overline{D}$ , B5 JIS $\overline{D}$ , B6 JIS $\overline{D}$ , C5 Env. $\overline{D}$ , C6 Env. $\overline{D}$ , DL Env. $\overline{D}$ , 16K $\overline{D}$ , Custom Size

- **U** Note
  - **220-240V** Default: A4D
  - 120V Default: 81/2 × 11 □
  - JIS stands for "Japanese Industrial Standard".

### Paper Size: Tray 1 to 4

You can specify the paper size for Tray 1 to 4.

#### 220-240V

Auto Detect, A4 $^{\text{D}}$ , A5 $^{\text{D}}$ , A6 $^{\text{D}}$  (Tray 1 only), B5 JIS $^{\text{D}}$ , B6 JIS $^{\text{D}}$ , C5 Env. $^{\text{D}}$ , C6 Env. $^{\text{D}}$ , DL Env. $^{\text{D}}$ , 8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 14^{\text{D}}$ , 8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{\text{D}}$ , 8 $^{1}/_{2} \times 11^{\text{D}}$ , 8 $^{1}/_{4} \times 13^{\text{D}}$ , 8 × 13 $^{\text{D}}$ , 7 $^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ , 5 $^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ , 4 $^{1}/_{8} \times 9^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ , 3 $^{7}/_{8} \times 7^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ , 16K $^{\text{D}}$ , Custom Size

### 120V

Auto Detect,  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14^{\text{D}}$ ,  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13^{\text{D}}$ ,  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11^{\text{D}}$ ,  $8^{1}/_{4} \times 13^{\text{D}}$ ,  $8 \times 13^{\text{D}}$ ,  $7^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ ,  $5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ ,  $4^{1}/_{8} \times 9^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ ,  $3^{7}/_{8} \times 7^{1}/_{2}^{\text{D}}$ , A4D, A5D, A6D (Tray 1 only), B5 JISD, B6 JISD, C5 Env.D, C6 Env.D, DL Env.D, 16KD, Custom Size

### **U** Note

- 220-240V Default: Auto Detect
- 120V Default: Auto Detect
- JIS stands for "Japanese Industrial Standard".

### Paper Type: Bypass Tray

No Display (Plain Paper), Recycled Paper, Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2, Special Paper 3, Colour Paper, Letterhead, Label Paper, OHP (Transparency), Envelope, Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, Preprinted Paper, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Thick Paper 2, Plain: Dup.Back, Thick 1: Dup.Back, Thick 2: Dup.Back, +Custom 1-8



- Default: No Display (Plain Paper)
- For details about the types of paper that can be loaded in the Bypass Tray, see Hardware Guide.
- Be sure to set a paper type using the control panel. If you do not set it, the printing result might not be proper.

### Paper Type: Tray 1 to 4

No Display (Plain Paper), Recycled Paper, Special Paper 1, Special Paper 2, Special Paper 3, Colour Paper, Letterhead, Label Paper, OHP (Transparency), Envelope, Glossy Paper, Coated Paper, Preprinted Paper, Bond Paper, Cardstock, Thin Paper, Thick Paper 1, Thick Paper 2, Plain: Dup.Back, Thick 1: Dup.Back, Thick 2: Dup.Back, +Custom 1-8



- Default: No Display (Plain Paper)
- For details about the types of paper that can be loaded in each tray, see Hardware Guide.
- Be sure to set a paper type using the control panel. If you do not set it, the printing result might not be proper.

### **Duplex Tray**

You can set each tray for duplex printing.

- Tray 1 to 4, Bypass Tray
  - On
  - Off



• Default: On

### **Auto Tray Select**

You can select whether to assign each tray to automatically print the paper size and type set by printer driver.



- Default: On
- When using custom size paper, if automatic tray selection is enabled, the size selected on the
  control panel has priority. If this setting is disabled, the size selected from the printer driver has
  priority.
- Only installed trays appear on the display panel.
- You can select multiple trays.
- If you need to have a tray locked, you must select the tray using both printer driver and control panel.

### **Tray Priority**

You can set a tray to be checked first when automatic tray selection is enabled from the printer driver. The tray selected here is used when no tray is selected for a print job.



- Default: Tray 1
- Only installed trays appear on the display panel.
- It is recommended that you load paper of the size and orientation you use most frequently in the tray selected in this setting.

### D

### Maintenance Menu

You can set printing conditions such as density and calibration, and printer management such as deleting temporary print jobs from the hard disk.

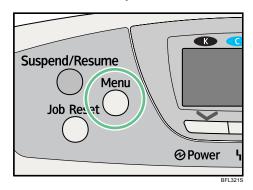
### Changing the Maintenance Menu

This section explains changing the maintenance menu using examples.

### Automatic deletion of temporary jobs in the hard disk

Follow the procedure below to set automatic deletion of temporary jobs stored in the hard disk.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Maintenance], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [HD Management], and then press the [OK] key.
- Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Auto Delete Temporary Jobs], and then press the [OK] key.
- 5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [On], and then press the [OK] key.
- 6. Press the  $[ ^{\blacktriangle} ]$  or  $[ ^{\blacktriangledown} ]$  key to set automatic deletion timer in hours between 1 through 200.
- 7. Press the [OK] key.

Wait for one second. The hard disk management screen appears.

8. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

### Maintenance Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Maintenance menu.

### **Quality Maintenance**

### **Colour Registration**

You can perform automatic adjustment of color registration.

### **Colour Calibration**

You can adjust the gradation of bright (highlighted parts) and medium areas (middle parts) for printing.

Adjust Auto Density

You can print the gradation of auto density.

Print Sheet 1

You can print gradation correction sheet 1.

• Print Sheet 2

You can print gradation correction sheet 2.

Reset Setting

You can reset the gradation correction value to default.



• For details, see Hardware Guide.

### Registration

You can adjust the starting position of the printing page.

Print Test Sheet

You can print the registration test sheet.

Tray 1 to 4, Bypass Tray, Duplex Unit



- Only the installed trays appear on the display panel.
- Adjustment

You can select the start position for printing on a page.

Horizontal:Tray 1 to 4, Horizontal:Bypass Tray, Horizontal:Duplex Back, Vertical:Tray 1 to 4, Vertical:Bypass Tray, Vertical:Duplex Back



• Only the installed trays appear on the display panel.

### 4 Colour Graphic Mode

This mode adjusts levels of toner color overlap. If characters or lines blur, setting priority on text may make them clearer. Under normal conditions, set priority on photo.

- Text Priority
- Photo Priority



• Default: Photo Priority

### **General Settings**

### **Plain Paper Setting**

You can select the type of plain paper.

- Tray 1 to 4, Bypass Tray
  - Plain Paper 1
  - Plain Paper 2



• Default: Plain Paper 1

### **Letterhead Setting**

You can select the letterhead printing mode.

- Letterhead 1
- Letterhead 2
- Letterhead 3



• Default: Letterhead 1

### **Glossy Paper Setting**

You can select the glossy paper printing mode.

- Glossy Paper 1
- Glossy Paper 2
- Glossy Paper 3
- Glossy Paper 4



• Default: Glossy Paper 3

### **Coated Paper Setting**

You can select the coated paper printing mode.

- Coated Paper 1
- Coated Paper 2
- Coated Paper 3
- Coated Paper 4,



• Default: Coated Paper 2

### **Label Paper Setting**

You can select the label paper printing mode.

- Label Paper 1
- Label Paper 2
- Label Paper 3



• Default: Label Paper 2

### **Envelope Setting**

You can select the envelope printing mode.

- Envelope 1
- Envelope 2
- Envelope 3
- Envelope 4



• Default: Envelope 1

### Replacement Alert

Use this function to specify the timing to notify user when supplies need to be replaced. Settings can be made separately for photo conductor unit, intermediate transfer unit, or fusing unit.

• Photoconductor Unit

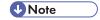
Notify Sooner, Normal, Notify Later



• Default: Normal

• Intermediate Transfer Unit

Notify Sooner, Normal, Notify Later



- Default: Normal
- Maintenance Kit

Notify Sooner, Normal, Notify Later

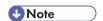


• Default: Normal

### **Supply End Option**

Use this function to specify the whether or not to continue printing when the following supplies end: photo conductor unit, intermediate transfer unit, fusing unit.

- Continue Printing
- Stop Printing



• Default: Continue Printing

### **Display Supply Info**

You can select whether or not to select the amount of toner on the initial screen.

- On
- Off



• Default: On

#### **Menu Protect**

You can select whether or not to protect menu. When you enable this setting, specify protection level.

- Level 1
- Level 2
- Off



- Default: Level 2
- If you would like to lower the protection level, disable this setting or select Level 1.
- You may not be able to change this setting depending on the setting of the printer.

### List/Test Print Lock

You can select whether or not to prohibit List/Test printing.

- On
- Off



- Default: Off
- You may not be able to change this setting depending on the setting of the printer.

### Unit of Measure

You can select whether to use "mm" or "inch" when specifying the size of custom sized paper.

- mm
- inch



- 220-240V Default: mm
- 120V Default: inch

### **Panel Key Sound**

You can select whether or not to sound the beeper when the control panel is pressed.

- On
- Off



• Default: On

### Warm-up Beeper

You can select whether or not to sound the beeper when the printer has completed a warm-up process.

- On
- Off



• Default: On

### **Display Contrast**

You can specify the density of the display.

### **Key Repeat**

You can specify whether or not to scroll the display panel when the  $[ ^{\blacktriangle} ]$  or  $[ ^{\blacktriangledown} ]$  key is held down. When you enable this setting, specify the scroll speed. (If repeat time is set to "Long", scroll speed becomes slow.)

- Do not Repeat
- Normal
- Repeat Time: Medium
- Repeat Time: Long



• Default: Normal

### **Timer Settings**

#### **Auto Reset Timer**

Specify whether or not to cancel settings made if no operation has been performed for a certain period of time while changing configuration using the control panel. When set to on, specify how long the printer is to wait before resetting configuration.

- On
- Off



· Default: On

### **Set Date**

You can set the date of the printer's internal clock using the  $[ ^{\blacktriangle} ]$  or  $[ ^{\blacktriangledown} ]$  key.

#### **Set Time**

You can set the time of the printer's internal clock using the [▲] or [▼] key.

### **HD Management**

Specify the settings related to deletion of data saved on the hard disk.

### **Delete All Temporary Jobs**

Use this function to delete all temporary documents saved on the hard disk (Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print data) at once.

### Delete All Stored Jobs

Use this function to delete all Stored Print data saved on the hard disk at once.

### **Auto Delete Temporary Jobs**

Specify whether or not to automatically delete temporary documents saved on the hard disk (Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print data). When set to on, specify how long the printer is to wait before deleting the documents.

- On
- Off



- Default: Off
- If you enable this setting, specify the timer in hours. (Default: 8 hours)

### **Auto Delete Stored Jobs**

Specify whether or not to automatically delete Stored Print data saved on the hard disk. When set to on, specify how long the printer is to wait before deleting the documents.

• On



• Off



- Default: On
- If you enable this setting, specify the timer in days. (Default: 3 days)

# List/Test Print Menu

You can print lists showing configurations on printer or the paper printings.

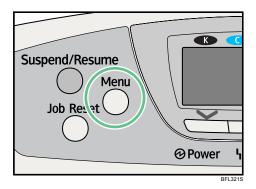
Also, you can check the types and characters of all the printable fonts.

### **Printing a Configuration Page**

Follow the procedure below to print the configuration page.



- The configuration page is printed on A4 or Letter (8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>"×11") size paper, so load them in the same paper tray.
- 1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [List/Test Print], and then press the [OK] key.
- Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Config. Page], and then press the [OK] key.
   After the configuration page is printed out, the screen returns to [List/Test print] menu.
- 4. Press the [Online] key.

The initial screen appears.

### Interpreting the Configuration Page

### **System Reference**

### **Unit Number**

Shows the serial number assigned to the board by its manufacturer.

### **Total Counter**

Shows the total number of pages printed by the printer to date.

### Firmware Version

Printer

Shows the version number of the printer controller firmware.

• Engine

Shows the version number of the printer engine firmware.

• NIB

Shows the version number of the network interface board.

### **Device Connection**

Shows the names of device options installed in the printer.

### HDD:Font / Macro Download

Shows the hard disk status

### **Printer Language**

Shows the version number of the printer language.

### **Attached Equipment**

Shows the options attached to the printer.

### **Paper Input**

Shows the current Paper Input settings.



• For details, see p.151 "Paper Input Menu".

### Maintenance

Shows the current Maintenance settings.



• For details, see p.155 "Maintenance Menu".

### **System**

Shows the current System settings.



• For details, see p.167 "System Menu".

### **Machine Modes**

Shows the current Machine Modes settings.

### ■ Reference

• For details, see p. 172 "Print Settings Menu".

### PCL Menu

Shows the current PCL settings.



• For details, see p. 172 "Print Settings Menu".

### PS Menu

Shows the current PS settings.



• For details, see p.172 "Print Settings Menu".

### **PDF Menu**

Shows the current PDF settings.



• For details, see p.172 "Print Settings Menu".

### Host Interface

Shows the current Host Interface settings.

When DHCP is active on the network, the IPv4 address, subnet mask and gateway address appear in parentheses.



• For details, see p.186 "Host Interface Menu".

### Interface Information

Interface information is displayed.

### **List/Test Print Menu Parameters**

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the List/Test Print menu.

### **Multiple Lists**

You can print the configuration page and error log, network summary and supply list.

### Config. Page

You can print the current configuration of the printer.

### **Error Log**

You can print an error report.

### **Network Summary**

You can print the network device status.

### **Supply Info List**

You can print the supply status.

### Menu List

You can print a menu list showing all available menus.

### Colour Demo Page

You can print a color demonstration page.

### PCL Config./Font Page

You can print the current configuration and installed PCL font list.

### PS Config. /Font Page

You can print the current configuration and installed PostScript font list.

### PDF Config./Font Page

You can print the current configuration and installed PDF font list.

### **Hex Dump**

You can print the data sent by the computer using Hex Dump.

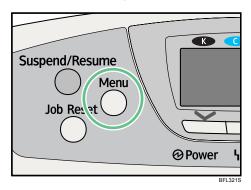
# System Menu

The System Menu allows you to set the printer's basic functions. Although you can operate the printer using the default settings, you can also change its settings to better suit your printing needs. Changes made to settings remain effective after power off.

### Changing the System Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the settings for Energy Saver Timer.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select [System], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select [Energy Saver], and then press the [OK] key.
- 4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Energy Saver Timer], and then enter the [OK] key.
- 5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the lead time needed to switch to the Energy Saver mode.
- 6. Press the [OK] key.

Wait for one second. The [Energy Saver] screen appears.

7. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

### System Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the System menu.

### **Print Error Report**

Select whether or not to print an error report when a printer error or memory error occurs.

Off



On



• Default: Off

#### **Auto Continue**

Specify whether or not to continue printing after a system error. When you enable this setting, specify how long the printer is to select error before resuming print.

- Off
- Immediate
- 1 minute
- 5 minutes
- 10 minutes
- 15 minutes



- Default: Off
- When this setting is set to on, and a certain error occurs in the printer while printing out, the job
  might be cancelled. When a job is cancelled due to error, the printer automatically begins the
  next job in the queue.

### **Memory Overflow**

You can specify whether or not to print a memory overflow error report.

- Do not print
- Error Information



• Default: Do not print

### **Printer Language**

You can specify the printer language.

- Auto
- PCL
- PS
- PDF



• Default: Auto

### **Sub Paper Size**

Specify whether or not to use paper of the alternate size automatically, if paper of the specified size is not loaded. When this setting is set to off, the printer uses paper of any size loaded in the specified tray.

- Auto
- Off



• Default: Auto

### **Default Printer Lang.**

Select the printer language to use when the printer fails to detect the printer language.

- PCL
- PS
- PDF



• Default: PCL

### **Energy Saver**

In Energy Saver mode, electric power consumption is reduced.

### **Energy Saver On/Off**

Select whether or not to switch to Energy Saver mode.

- On
- Off



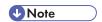
- Default: On
- When the printer switches to Energy Saver mode, the Power indicator is unlit, but the Online indicator remains lit.

### **Energy Saver Timer**

Specify the lead time needed to switch to Energy Saver mode.

- 1 minute
- 5 minutes
- 15 minutes
- 30 minutes
- 45 minutes
- 60 minutes





• Default: 30 minutes

### **Memory Usage**

Select memory to be used from Font Priority or Frame Priority.

- Font Priority
- Frame Priority



• Default: Frame Priority

### **B&W Page Detect**

Specify whether to recognize black-and-white images by page or by document. Black-and-while recognition function allows the printer to print monochrome images in monochrome mode even if color printing is specified.

- Per Page
- Per Job



• Default: Per Page

### **Spool Printing**

Specify whether or not to complete spooling before starting to print.

- On
- Off



- · Default: Off
- · Spooling stores a sent print job temporarily in the printer, and then prints it.
- This menu appears only when the optional hard disk is installed.

### **RAM Disk**

If the optional hard disk is not installed for PDF Direct Print, select a value of 2 MB or higher.

This menu appears only when the optional hard disk is not installed.

- 0 MB
- 2 MB
- 4 MB
- 8 MB
- 16 MB



When the amount of SDRAM is small and RAM Disk is set to 16 MB, printing may not be possible
depending on the print job and duplex printing may be canceled. If this happens, increase the
amount of SDRAM, or set RAM Disk to 8 MB or less.



- Default: 4 MB
- This menu appears only when the optional hard disk is not installed.
- For details about the optional SDRAM module, see Hardware Guide.

### **Auto Email Notify**

Specify whether or not to send an error message to a preset e-mail address when an error occurs in the printer.

- Off
- On



• After changing the setting, turn off the power of the printer briefly, and then turn it on again.



- Default: On
- For information, see Web Image Monitor Help.

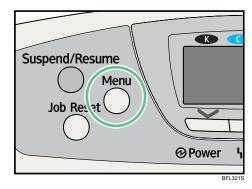
# **Print Settings Menu**

The System Menu allows you to set conditions for printing.

### Changing the Print Settings Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the Bypass Tray Priority.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select [Print Settings], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select [Machine Modes], and then press the [OK] key.
- **4.** Press the  $[^{\blacktriangle}]$  or  $[^{\blacktriangledown}]$  key to select [Bypass Tray Priority], and then enter the [OK] key.
- 5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the desired setting item, and then press the [OK] key.
  Wait for one second. The [Machine Modes] screen appears.
- 6. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

### **Print Settings Menu Parameters**

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the Print Settings menu.

### Machine Modes

### Copies

Specify the number of copies to print.

If the number of copies to print is specified by command or the printer driver, this setting is overridden.

• 1 to 999

### Page Size

Specify the default paper size.

### 220-240V

A4, A5, A6, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, C5 Env., C6 Env., DL Env.,  $8^1/_2 \times 14$ ,  $8^1/_2 \times 13$ ,  $8^1/_2 \times 11$ ,  $8^1/_4 \times 13$ ,  $8 \times 13$ ,  $7^1/_4 \times 10^1/_2$ ,  $5^1/_2 \times 8^1/_2$ ,  $4^1/_8 \times 9^1/_2$ ,  $3^7/_8 \times 7^1/_2$ , 16K, Custom Size

### 120V

 $8^{1}/_{2} \times 14$ ,  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 13$ ,  $8^{1}/_{2} \times 11$ ,  $8^{1}/_{4} \times 13$ ,  $8 \times 13$ ,  $7^{1}/_{4} \times 10^{1}/_{2}$ ,  $5^{1}/_{2} \times 8^{1}/_{2}$ ,  $4^{1}/_{8} \times 9^{1}/_{2}$ ,  $3^{7}/_{8} \times 7^{1}/_{2}$ , A4, A5, A6, B5 JIS, B6 JIS, C5 Env., C6 Env., DL Env., 16K, Custom Size

### **U** Note

- 220-240V Default: A4
- **120V** Default: 8<sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub> × 11
- The default paper size is used when the paper size is not specified in the print data.

### **Edge to Edge Print**

Select to whether or not to print using the whole print area, leaving minimum edge boarders.

- Off
- On



• Default: Off

### **Duplex**

Select whether or not to print on both sides of a sheet. When set to on, specify the binding method.

- None
- Long Edge Bind
- · Short Edge Bind



• Default: None

### Rotate by 180 Degrees

Select whether or not to rotate image by 180 degrees when printing.

- On
- Off



Default : Off

### Blank Page Print

Select whether or not to print blank pages.

- On
- Off



• Default: On

### **Letterhead Setting**

Specify the letterhead printing mode.

- Off
- Auto Detect
- On (Always)



• Default: Off

### **Bypass Tray Priority**

When paper size/type setting does not match between the printer driver and the printer, you can select which setting is used.

- Driver/Command
- Machine Settings



• Default: Driver/Command

### **Tray Switching**

Select whether or not to automatically switch to a suitable tray, when the setting of the current tray does not match the paper size/type specified by the printer driver.

- On
- Off



• Default: Off

### **Extend Auto Tray Switching**

Select whether or not to automatically switch to a suitable tray, when the setting of the current tray does not match the paper size/type specified by the printer driver.

- On
- Off



• Default: Off

### PCL Menu

You can set conditions when using PCL for printing.

### Orientation

Select the page orientation.

- Portrait
- Landscape



• Default: Portrait

#### Form Lines

Specify the number of lines per page between 5 and 128.



- **220-240V** Default: 64
- 120V Default: 60
- The default paper size is used when the paper size is not specified in the print data.

### **Font Source**

Specify the location of the default font.

- Resident
- RAM
- HDD
- SD
- SD Font Download



- Default: Resident
- When you select RAM, you can select only fonts downloaded to the printer RAM.
- When you select HDD, you can select only fonts downloaded to the optional hard disk.
- When you select SD, you can select only fonts downloaded to the SD card.

### Font Number

Specify the ID of the default font you want to use.

- 0 to 63 (Internal)
- 1 to X (Download; "X" is the number of downloaded fonts)



• Default: 0

### **Point Size**

Specify the point size you want to use for the default font between 4 and 999.75 in 0.25 increments.



- Default: 12.00 points
- This setting is effective only for a variable-space font.

### **Font Pitch**

Specify the number of characters per inch you want to use for the default font between 0.44 and 99.99 in 0.01 increments.



- Default: 10.00 pitch
- This setting is effective only for fixed-space fonts.

### Symbol Set

You can specify the character set for the default font. Available sets are as follows:

Roman-8, ISO L1, ISO L2, ISO L5, PC-8, PC-8 D/N, PC-850, PC-852, PC8-TK, Win L1, Win L2, Win L5, Desktop, PS Text, VN Intl, VN US, MS Publ, Math-8, PS Math, VN Math, Pifont, Legal, ISO 4, ISO 6, ISO 11, ISO 15, ISO 17, ISO 21, ISO 60, ISO 69, Win 3.0



• Default: PC-8

### **Courier Font**

Select the type of courier font.

- Regular
- Dark



• Default: Regular

### Ext. A4 Width

Select whether or not to extend the width of the printable area of A4 sheets, by reducing side margins.

- On
- Off



• Default: Off

### Append CR to LF

Select whether or not to append a CR code to each LF code to print text data clearly.

- Off
- On



Default: Off

### **Resolution**

You can specify the print resolution in dots per inch.

- 300dpi
- 600dpi



• Default: 600dpi

### PS Menu

You can set conditions when using PostScript for printing.

#### **Job Timeout**

You can specify how long the printer waits (in seconds) before cancelling the current job when the job is interrupted while being processed.

- Use Driver/Command
- Use Machine Settings



- Default: Use Driver/Command
- If you select Use Machine Settings, enter a value between 0 and 999. (Default: 0)

### **Wait Timeout**

You can specify how long the printer waits (in seconds) before it cancels receiving the job when the printer cannot detect the end of the job.

- Use Driver/Command
- Use Machine Settings



- Default: Use Driver/Command
- If you select Use Machine Settings, enter a value between 0 and 999. (Default: 300)

#### **Data Format**

Select the data format from Binary Data or TBCP.

This setting is effective when using a parallel, USB, or EtherTalk connection.

When using a parallel or USB connection, the print job is canceled if binary data is sent from the printer driver.

When using an Ethernet connection, the print job is canceled if:

- The printer driver data format is TBCP and the data format selected using the control panel is Binary Data.
- The printer driver data format is binary and the data format selected using the control panel is TBCP.



• Default: TBCP

### **Resolution**

Select the resolution.

- 600dpi Fast
- 600dpi Standard
- 1200dpi



• Default: 600dpi Fast

### **Colour Setting**

Specify the RGB setting.

- None
- Fine
- Super Fine



• Default: Super Fine

### **Colour Profile**

Specify the color profile.

- Auto
- Presentation
- Solid Color
- Photographic
- User Setting



• Default: Auto

### **Process Colour Model**

Specify the color model.

- Colour
- · Black and White



Default: Colour

### PDF Menu

You can set conditions when using PDF for printing.

### Change PDF Password

Specify the password for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.



- If you do not set a PDF password, this menu does not appear.
- The password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but must be sent through the network. For increased security, use this menu on the control panel to set the password directly.

### **PDF Group Password**

Specify a group password specified using DeskTopBinder Lite.



- If you do not set a PDF group password, this menu does not appear.
- When you use a group password, the optional data protection unit must be installed.
- The password can be set using Web Image Monitor, but must be sent through the network. For increased security, use this menu on the control panel to set the password directly.
- Default: no password set

### **Resolution**

Specify the resolution for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- 600 dpi Fast
- 600 dpi Standard
- 1200 dpi



• Default: 600dpi Standard

### **Colour Setting**

Specify the RGB setting for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- None
- Fine



• Super Fine



• Default: Super Fine

### **Colour Profile**

Specify the color profile for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- Auto
- Presentation
- Solid Colour
- Photographic
- User Setting



• Default: Auto

### **Process Colour Model**

Specify the color model for the PDF file executing PDF Direct Print.

- Colour
- Black and White



• Default: Colour

# 6

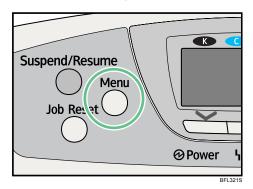
# **Security Options Menu**

The System Menu allows you to set conditions for printing.

# **Changing the Security Options Menu**

Follow the procedure below to erase data inside memory.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select [Security Options], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press [▲] or [▼] key to select [Extended Security], and then press the [OK] key.
- 4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Erase All Memory], and then press the [OK] key.
- 5. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [On], and then press [Erase No].
- 6. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to enter overwrite times, and then press the [OK] key.
- 7. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [On], and then press the [OK] key.
  Wait for one second. The [Security Options] menu appears.
- 8. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Security Options Menu Parameters

This section explains about parameters that can be set on the security options menu.

### **Extended Security**

Depending on the setting of the printer, some of the settings listed below may not appear.

### **Driver Encryption Key**

Specify the driver encryption key.

### **Encrypt Address Book**

Select whether or not to encrypt the printer's address book data.

- On
- Off



• Default: Off

### Restrict User Info.Display

Select whether or not to display user information as "\*\*\*\*\*\* when checking job information without being authenticated through user authentication.

- On
- Off



Default: Off

### **Enhance File Protection**

Select whether or not to automatically lock password-protected print files if an invalid password is entered ten times. When a file is locked, you cannot select them even if the correct password is entered.

- On
- Off



• Default: Off

### Settings by SNMPv1 and v2

Select whether or not to prohibit changes to the printer settings through access using SNMPv1, v2 protocol.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit



• Default: Do not Prohibit

### **Simple Encryption**

Select whether or not to use simple, or restricted, encryption when enhanced encryption cannot be used.

Restrict

• Do not Restrict

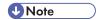


• Default: Do not Restrict

### **Authenticate Current Job**

Select whether or not authentication is required for operations such as canceling jobs. If set to Login Privilege, only authorized users or machine administrator can operate the printer. If set to Access Privilege, users who sent a print job or the machine administrator can operate the printer.

- Login Privilege
- Access Privilege
- Off



• Default: Off

### **Password Policy**

Specify the format of passwords: types of characters to be used and minimum length.

Valid characters for passwords are upper-case letters, lower-case letters, decimal numbers, and symbols such as #. If complexity is set to Level 1, passwords must use two types of these characters; if set to Level 2, three types.

· Complexity Setting

Level 1, Level 2, Do not Restrict



- Default: Do not Restrict
- Minimum Character No.

Between 0 to 32



- Default: 0
- If set to 0, minimum length is not specified.

### @Remote Service

Select whether or not to prohibit @Remote service.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit



- Default: Do not Prohibit
- If you would like to set to Prohibit, contact your service representative.

6

### **Update Firmware**

Select whether or not to prohibit @Remote service.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit



- Default: Do not Prohibit
- If you would like to set to Prohibit, contact your service representative.

### **Change Firmware Structure**

Select whether or not to prohibit Change Frimware Structure.

- Prohibit
- Do not Prohibit



- Default: Do not Prohibit
- If you would like to set to Prohibit, contact your service representative.

### Service Mode Lock

Select whether or not to prohibit entering Service mode.

- On
- Off



- · Default: Off
- This setting may not appear depending on the setting of the printer.

### Firmware Version

Displays the firmware version of the printer.

## **Network Security Level**

Specify the network security level.

- Level 0
- Level 1
- Level 2



• Default: Level 0

### **Auto Erase Memory Setting**

Select whether or not to automatically delete memory. When set to on, specify the overwrite times.

• On

No. of Overwrites: Between 1 to 9

• Off



- · Default: Off
- This setting appears only when the optional data overwrite security unit is installed.

### **Erase All Memory**

Select to delete all data inside the memory. When deleting memory, specify the overwrite times.

• No. of Overwrites

Between 1 to 3

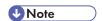


• This setting appears only when the optional data overwrite security unit is installed.

### **Transfer Log Setting**

You can select whether or not to send log information to the log collection server.

- On (Only available from the log collection server.)
- Off



• Default: Off

### **Machine Data Encryption**

Encrypt data stored on the hard disk. Once you encrypt the data, the following menus appear on the control panel display.

- Update Encryption Key
   Update the encryption key.
- Cancel Encryption

Cancel the encryption settings.

Print Encryption Key

Print the encryption key.



• This setting appears only when the optional HDD encryption unit is installed.

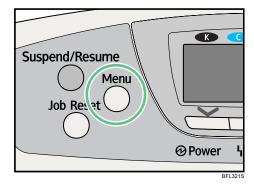
# Host Interface Menu

You can set configurations about network connections and communication when using parallel connection between the printer and the computer. The changed configuration holds even if the printer is turned off.

# Changing the Host Interface Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the I/O Timeout setting.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select [Host Interface], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press the  $[^{\blacktriangle}]$  or  $[^{\blacktriangledown}]$  key to select [I/O] Timeout], and then press the [OK] key.
- 4. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the lead time needed to end a printing operation, and then press the [OK] key.

Wait for one second. The [Host Interface] menu appears.

5. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

### Host Interface Menu Parameters

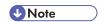
This section explains parameters that can be set on the Host Interface menu.

### I/O Buffer

Select the size of I/O Buffer. Normally it is not necessary to change this setting.

- 128 KB
- 256 KB





Default: 128 KB

### I/O Timeout

Specify how many seconds the printer should wait before ending a print job. If printing operation is frequently interrupted by data from other ports, you can increase the timeout period.

- 10 seconds
- 15 seconds
- 20 seconds
- 25 seconds
- 60 seconds



• Default: 15 seconds

### Network

You can make network-related settings.

### Machine IPv4 Address

Select whether to set the IPv4 address automatically or manually.

Auto-Obtain (DHCP)/Specify (Default: Auto-Obtain (DHCP))

When DHCP is set to on, the IPv4 address, subnet mask address, and gateway address cannot be changed. To change them, set DHCP to off. Contact your administrator for information about the network configuration.

• IP Add.

Manually specify the IPv4 address.



Default: 11.22.33.44

Subnet M

Manually specify the subnet mask.



Default: 0.0.0.0

Gateway

Manually specify the gateway address.



• Default: 0.0.0.0

### **IPv6 Stateless Setting**

Select whether to enable or disable IPv6.

- Active
- Inactive



Default: Active

### **IPsec**

This is a security function. For details, contact your network administrator.

- Active
- Inactive



• Default: Inactive

### **NW Frame Type**

Specify the frame type for NetWare.

- Auto Select
- Ethernet II
- Ethernet 802.2
- Ethernet 802.3
- Ethernet SNAP



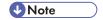
• Default: Auto Select

### **Effective Protocol**

Specify the effective protocol.

IPv4

Active, Inactive



- Default: Active
- IPv6

Active, Inactive



- Default: Inactive
- NetWare

Active, Inactive





- Default: Active
- SMB

Active, Inactive



- Default: Active
- AppleTalk

Active, Inactive



• Default: Active

### **Ethernet Speed**

Specify the network speed to operate the printer.

- Auto Select
- 10Mbps Half Duplex
- 10Mbps Full Duplex
- 100Mbps Half Duplex
- 100Mbps Full Duplex



• Default: Auto Select

### IEEE802.1X Auth.(Ethernet)

Select whether to enable or disable IEEE802.11X Authentication on Ethernet.

- Active
- Inactive



• Default: Inactive

### Restr. IEEE802.1X Auth. Def.

Initialize IEEE802.1X Authentication data.

### **LAN Type**

Select Ethernet or Wireless LAN.

- Ethernet
- Wireless LAN



- Default: Ethernet
- This menu appears only when the optional wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

### Parallel Interface

Configure settings for the parallel interface. This menu appears only when the optional parallel interface board is installed.

### **Parallel Timing**

Specify the data transmission mode.

- ACK inside
- ACK outside
- STB down



• Default: ACK outside

### Parallel Comm. Speed

Specify the data transmission rate.

- High Speed
- Standard



• Default: High Speed

### **Selection Signal Status**

Specify the signal status.

- High
- Low



• Default: High

### **Input Prime**

Specify whether to enable or disable Input Prime.

- Active
- Inactive

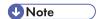


• Default: Inactive

### Bidirectional Comm.

Specify whether to enable or disable bidirectional communication.

- On
- Off



• Default: On

### Wireless LAN

Configure settings for wireless LAN. This menu appears only when the optional wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

### Communication Mode

Specify the transmission mode for wireless LAN.

- 802.11 Ad-hoc Mode
- Infrastructure Mode



- Default: Infrastructure Mode
- Transmission mode can also be set using a Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

### **SSID Setting**

Specify the SSID in infrastructure mode and Ad-hoc modes.



- Default: blank (ASSID)
- Select [?] to enter [/] for the SSID. Also, [¥] appears when printing the configuration page, read it as [/].
- Characters used are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes).
- An SSID is set automatically to the nearest access point if no SSID has been set.
- If no SSID has been set for Ad-hoc mode, an SSID is set automatically and the same SSID is used for Ad-hoc mode and infrastructure mode.
- If blank is specified in SSID for Ad-hoc mode, "ASSID" appears.
- An SSID can also be set using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

### Ad-hoc Channel

**220-240V** Select channels: 1-13, 36, 40, 44, 48 **120V** Select channels: 1-11, 36, 40, 44, 48



• Default: 11

### Security Method

Select whether to enable encryption and specify the security type when the encryption is enabled.

- Off
- WFP

Change (HEX), Change (ASCII)

WPA

Encryption Method (TKIP, CCMP(AES)), Authentication Method (WPA-PSK, WPA (802.1X), WPA2-PSK, WPA2)



- Default: Off
- The WEP key can be entered using a hexadecimal number or an ASCII character sequence.
- The WPA-PSK can be entered using an ASCII character sequence.
- When using 64 bit WEP, up to 10 hexadecimal or 5 ASCII characters can be entered.
   When using 128 bit WEP, up to 26 hexadecimal or 13 ASCII characters can be entered.
- The WEP key can also be set using Web Image Monitor. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help.

### Wireless LAN Signal

You can check the signal strength when using wireless LAN.

### **Restore Defaults**

Reset the wireless LAN to default.

### **USB Setting**

Select speed for USB interface.

### **USB Speed**

- Auto Select
- Full Speed



• Default: Auto Select

### **Fixed USB Port**

- On
- Off



• Default: Off

# 6

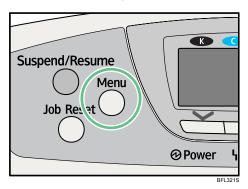
# Language Menu

You can set language displayed on the menu.

# Changing the Language Menu

Follow the procedure below to change the interface language.

1. Press the [Menu] key.



The menu screen appears.

- 2. Press the  $[ ^{\blacktriangle} ]$  or  $[ ^{\blacktriangledown} ]$  key to select [Language], and then press the [OK] key.
- 3. Press the [▲] or [▼] key to select the language, and then press the [OK] key.
  - Wait for one second. The language menu screen appears.
- 4. Press the [Menu] key.

The initial screen appears.

# Language Menu Parameters

You can select the language you use. Available languages are as follows:

English, German, French, Italian, Dutch, Swedish, Norwegian, Danish, Spanish, Finnish, Portuguese, Czech, Polish, Hungarian, Russian.



• Default: English

# 7. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

This chapter explains how to use Web Image Monitor and other applications to monitor the printer or change its settings.

# **Using Web Image Monitor**

Using Web Image Monitor, you can check the printer status and change settings.

### Available operations

The following operations can be remotely performed using Web Image Monitor from a client computer.

- · Displaying printer status or settings
- · Checking the print job status or history
- · Interrupting currently printing jobs
- · Resetting the printer
- · Managing the Address Book
- Making printer settings
- · Making network protocol settings
- · Making security settings

### Configuring the printer

To perform the operations from Web Image Monitor, TCP/IP is required. After the printer is configured to use TCP/IP, operations from Web Image Monitor become available.

### Recommended Web browser

Windows:

Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 or higher

Firefox 1.0 or higher

Mac OS:

Firefox 1.0 or higher

Safari 1.0, 1.2, 2.0 (412.2) or higher

Web Image Monitor supports screen reader software. We recommend JAWS 7.0 or a later version.



• Safari cannot be used on Mac OS X 10.4.1.

- Display and operation problems can occur if you do not enable JavaScript and cookies, or if you are using a non-recommended Web Browser.
- If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
- If you click your browser's back button but the previous page does not appear, click the browser's refresh button and try again.
- Printer information is not automatically updated. To perform an update, click [Refresh] in the display area.
- We recommend using Web Image Monitor in the same network.
- You cannot access to the printer from outside the firewall.
- When using the printer under DHCP, the IP address may be automatically changed by the DHCP server settings. Enable DDNS setting on the printer, and then connect using the printer's host name. Alternatively, set a static IP address to the DHCP server.
- If the HTTP port is disabled, connection to the printer using the printer's URL cannot be established. SSL setting must be enabled on this printer. For details, consult your network administrator.
- When using the SSL encryption protocol, enter "https://(printer's IP address or host name)/".
- Internet Explorer must be installed on your computer. Use the most recent available version. We recommend Internet Explorer 6.0 or later.
- When you are using Firefox, fonts and colors may be different, or tables may be out of shape.
- When using a host name under Windows Server 2003 or Windows Vista with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.
- To use JAWS 7.0 under Web Image Monitor, you must be running Windows OS and Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, or a later version.

# **Displaying Top Page**

This section explains the Top Page and how to display Web Image Monitor.

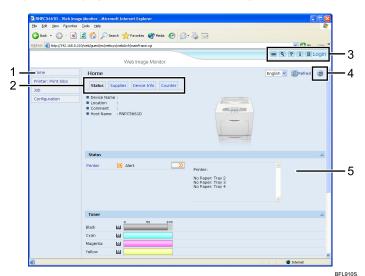


- When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10".
- 1. Start your Web browser.
- Enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name)/" in your Web browser's URL bar.
   Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

If the printer's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, you can enter it.

When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentication is issued, enter "https://(printer's IP address or host name)/".





Every Web Image Monitor page is divided into the following areas:

### 1. Menu area

If you select menu, it's content will be shown on the work area, or the sub area.

### 2. Tab area

Details about each menu appears.

### 3. Header area

The dialog box for switching to the user mode and administrator mode appears, and each mode's menu will be displayed.

The link to help and dialog box for keyword search appears.

### 4. Help

Use Help to view or download Help file contents.

### 5. Display area

Displays the contents of the item selected in the menu area.

Printer information in the display area is not automatically updated. Click [Refresh] at the upper right in the display area to update the printer information. Click the Web browser's [Refresh] button to refresh the entire browser screen.



When using a host name under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2 or Windows Vista with IPv6
protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.

### When User Authentication is Set

### Login (using Web Image Monitor)

Follow the procedure below to log on when user authentication is set.

- 1. Click [Login].
- Enter a login user name and password, and then click [Login].
   For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.



- For user code authentication, enter a user code in [Login User Name], and then click [Login].
- The procedure may differ depending on the Web browser used.

### Log Off (using Web Image Monitor)

Click [Logout] to log off.



• When you log on and made the setting, always click [Logout].

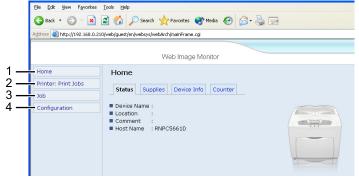
### **About Menu and Mode**

There are two modes available with Web Image Monitor: guest mode and administrator mode.

Displayed Items may differ depending on the printer type.

### **About Guest Mode**

In the guest mode, printer status, settings, and print job status can be viewed, but the printer settings cannot be changed.



BFL911S

### 1. Home

The [Status], [Supplies], [Device Info], and [Counter] tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

### 2. Printer: Print Jobs

Allows you to display list of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print jobs.

### 3. Job

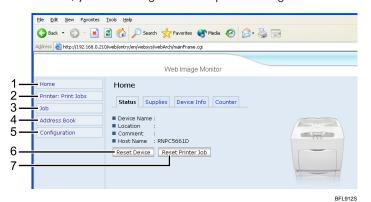
Display all print files.

### 4. Configuration

Display current printer and network settings.

### **Administrator Mode**

In the administrator mode, you can configure various printer settings.



### 1. Home

The [Status], [Supplies], [Device Info], and [Counter] tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

### 2. Printer: Print Jobs

Allows you to display list of Locked Print, Sample Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print jobs.

### 3. Job

Display all print files.

### 4. Address Book

User information can be registered, displayed, changed, and deleted.

### 5. Configuration

Make system settings for the printer, interface settings, and security.

### 6. Reset Device

Click to reset the printer. If a print job is being processed, the printer will be reset after the print job is completed. This button is located on Top Page.

### 7. Reset Printer Job

Click to reset current print jobs and print jobs in queue. This button is located on Top Page.

### Access in the Administrator Mode

Follow the procedure below to access Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.

1. On Top Page, click [Login].

The window for entering the login user name and password appears.

2. Enter your login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

# Displaying Web Image Monitor Help

When using Help for the first time, clicking the icon marked "?" ( ) makes the following screen appear, in which you can view Help in two different ways, as shown below:

### Viewing Help on our Web site

Downloading Help to your computer

### **Downloading and Checking Help**

You can download Help to your computer. As the Help URL, you can specify the path to the local file to view the Help without connecting to the Internet.



- By clicking "?" (2) in the header area, the contents of Help appear.
- By clicking "?" (?), the Help icon in the display area, Help for the setting items in the display area
  appears.

# Downloading Help

- 1. In the [OS] list, select the operating system.
- 2. In the [Language] list, select the language.
- 3. Click [Download].
- 4. Download Help by following the instructions on the screen.
- 5. Store the downloaded compressed file in a given location, and then decompress the file.

  To create a link for the Help button (??), save the downloaded Help files on a Web server.

### Linking the URL of the downloaded Help

You can link the URL of the help file on a computer or Web server to the "?" button.

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.

- 2. In the menu area, click [Configuration].
- 3. Click [Webpage].
- 4. In the [Set Help URL Target] box, enter the URL of the help file.

If you saved the help file to "C:\HELP\EN", enter "file://C:/HELP/". For example, if you saved the file to a Web server, and the URL of the index file is "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/EN/index.html", enter "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".

5. Click [OK].



# Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can monitor the network printers. Also, you can change the configuration of the network interface board using TCP/IP or IPX/SPX.



IPv6 cannot be used on this function.

### Protocol stack provided with Operating System

Windows 2000

TCP/IP

IPX/SPX

NetWare

Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP

Windows Server 2003

TCP/IP

IPX/SPX

Windows XP

TCP/IP

IPX/SPX

Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP

Windows Vista

TCP/IP

Novell Client for Windows NT/2000/XP/Vista

### Available operations

The following functions are available:

- Printer Information function
  - Display the network settings and detailed information of the printer.
  - Display the number of pages printed under each user code.
  - Display the status of print jobs sent from computers.
  - Change the printer network settings.
- Device Settings function
  - Lock some of the setting items on the control panel so that they cannot be changed using the control panel.
  - Select type of paper loaded in the paper trays.
- Energy Saver function

- Enable or disable the Energy Saver mode.
- System Status function
- Display the information such as when paper is depleted during printing on a computer.
- Groups function
  - Monitor multiple printers at the same time. When there are multiple printers to manage, you
    can create groups and classify the printers to facilitate management.
  - You can customize printer status according to groups, and send status notification e-mail to a computer.

### Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Follow the procedure below to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].

The default interface language is English.

- 4. Click [SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin].
- 5. Click [Next>].

The software license agreement appears in the [License Agreement] dialog box.

- 6. After reading through its contents, click [Next >].
- 7. Follow the instructions on the screen.

A message appears when the installation is completed.

8. Click [OK].

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.



- Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch "Setup.exe" located on the CD-ROM root directory.
- If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, restart the computer and continue the configuration.

# Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration

Follow the procedure below to change the network interface board configuration using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

- 3. In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.
- 4. On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].



A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts. Follow the instruction on the screen.

- Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].
   For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
- 6. Configure settings using Web Image Monitor.
- 7. Click [Logout].
- 8. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 9. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

# Reference

p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# Locking the Menus on the Printer's Control Panel

Follow the procedure below to lock the menus on the printer's control panel.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

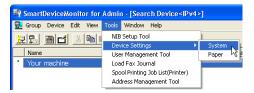
On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

- 3. In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.
- 4. On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [System].



A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

The [System] page of Web Image Monitor appears.

- 6. On the [Protect Printer Display Panel], select [Level 1] or [Level 2].
- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Click [Logout].
- 9. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 10. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



• For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".



p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# Changing the Paper Type

Follow the procedure below to change the paper type.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

- 3. In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.
- 4. On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [Paper].

A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

The [Paper] page appears.

Select a paper type in the [Paper Type] list for each tray.

- 6. Enter required setting items, and then click [OK].
- 7. Click [Logout].
- 8. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 9. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about setting items, see Help in the [General Settings] on [Configuration] page.

### ■ Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# **Managing User Information**

Follow the procedure below to manage the user's information using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Prints jobs can be managed and functions restricted by user codes.

### Starting User Management Tool

Follow the procedure below to start User Management Tool.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

- In the list, select a printer you want to manage.
- 4. On the [Tools] menu, click [User Management Tool].



The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

5. Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].

Enter the same user name and password you enter to log on to the Web Image Monitor. For details about the user name and password, consult your administrator.

User Management Tool starts.

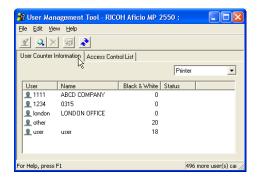


• For details about User Management Tool, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

### Displaying the number of sheets printed

Follow the procedure below to display the number of sheets printed under each user.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
- 2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.



The number of pages printed under each user appears.

3. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

### Exporting the information about the number of pages printed

Follow the procedure below to export the information of the number of pages printed under each user as a ".csv" file.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
- 2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.
- 3. On the [File] menu, click [Export User Statistics List].



- 4. Specify the save location and file name, and then click [Save].
- 5. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

### Resetting the number of pages printed to 0

Follow the procedure below to reset the number of pages printed under each user to 0.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
- 2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.
- 3. Select the user whose information you want to reset.
- 4. On the [Edit] menu, click [Reset User Counters].



5. Select the check box, and then click [OK].

A confirmation message appears.

6. Click [OK].

The count for the selected paper type becomes 0 and [Modified] is displayed for [Status].

7. On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].



Changes are applied to information on the [User Counter Information] tab.

8. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

# **Restricting functions**

Follow the procedure below to restrict use of individual functions.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
- 2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.
- 3. Click the user whose functions you want to restrict.



- 5. Select the check box of the functions you want to restrict.
- 6. Click [OK].

A confirmation message appears.

7. Click [Yes].

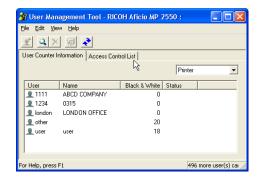
The settings are applied.

8. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

### Setting applicable functions to new users

Follow the procedure below to add new users and set functions applicable to them.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
- 2. Click the [Access Control List] tab of User Management Tool.



3. On the [Edit] menu, click [Adds New User].



- 4. Enter the user code and user name.
- 5. Select the check box of the functions applicable to the new user.
- If the check boxes are unavailable, there is no restriction to use that function.
- 6. Click [OK].

The user is added, and [New] is displayed for [Status].

7. On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].

The settings are applied.

8. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.



• For details about setting restrictions, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

# Configuring the Energy Saver Mode

Follow the procedure below to configure Energy Saver mode.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

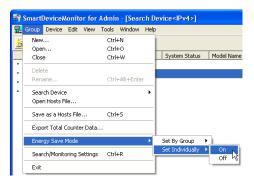
Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. Select the printer whose settings you want to make.

To make settings for all printers in the selected group, select no printer.

4. Click the [Group] menu, point to [Energy Save Mode], [Set Individually], and then click [On].



To select all the printers in the group, select [Set By Group].

To disable Energy Save mode, click [Off].

5. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



For details about the setting for Energy Saver mode, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

# Setting a Password

Follow the procedure below to set a password.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

- 3. In the list, select a printer whose configuration you want to change.
- 4. On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].



7

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instructions on the screen.

5. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

- 6. Click [Configuration].
- Click [Program/Change Administrator] on the [Device Settings] area, and then change the settings.
- 8. Click [OK].
- 9. Click [Logout].
- 10. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 11. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

### **Checking the Printer Status**

Follow the procedure below to check printer status.

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using TCP/IP SNMP v3, enter the user authentication.

To obtain status details, click the printer in the list, and then click [Open] on the [Device] menu.

The printer status appears in the dialog box.

4. Click [System] or [Printer].

The printer status appears in the dialog box.

5. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

# **Changing Names and Comments**

Follow the procedure below to change the names and comments of the printer.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. Select a printer in the list, and then click [NIB Setup Tool] on the [Tools] menu.

A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instructions on the screen.

4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

- 5. Click [Configuration].
- 6. Click [System] on the [Device Settings] area, and then change the settings.
- 7. Click [OK].
- 8. Click [Logout].
- 9. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 10. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



- In the [Device Name] box, enter a device name on the printer using up to 31 characters.
- In the [Comment] box, enter a comment on the printer using up to 31 characters.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

# Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

### Load Fax Journal

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- 2. On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv31.

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. Select a printer in the list, and then click [Load Fax Journal] on the [Tools] menu.

A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

[Fax Journal] area appears in the Web Image Monitor.

- 5. Click [Logout].
- 6. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 7. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



- For details, see Help in [Fax Journal] area.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

### Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

### Viewing and Deleting Spool Print Jobs

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- 2. On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. Select a printer in the list, and then click [Spool Printing Job List(Printer)] on the [Tools] menu.

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

[Spool Printing Job List] appears in the Web Image Monitor.

- 5. Click [Logout].
- 6. Quit Web Image Monitor.
- 7. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

- **U** Note
  - To display Spool Printing Job List, [Spool Printing] must be set to [Active] on Web Image Monitor in advance.
  - To delete the Spool Printing Job, select the document you want to delete and then click [Delete].
  - For details, see Help in the [Spool Printing Job List] area.
  - For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

### Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

### **Managing Address Information**

- 1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of printers using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the printer whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

- 3. Select a printer in the list, and then click [Address Management Tool] on the [Tools] menu.

  The dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.
- 4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [OK].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

[Address Management Tool] starts. Make the necessary settings.

- 5. Click [Exit].
- 6. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.



- For details, see Address Management Tool Help.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

### Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

### 7

# Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

To view the status of printers using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, configure SmartDeviceMonitor for Client beforehand.

### **Monitoring Printers**

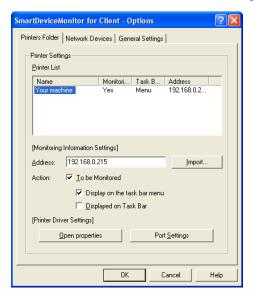
Follow the procedure below to monitor the printer using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

 Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, point to [Properties], and then click [Monitor Device Settings...].



The SmartDeviceMonitor for Client [- Options] dialog box appears.

2. On the [Printer Folder] tab, select the printer you want to monitor, and then select the [To Be Monitored] check box in the Monitoring Information Settings area.



To display the printer status on the task bar, you must first select the [Display on the task bar menu] check box, and then select the [Displayed on Task Bar] check box.

3. Click [OK].

The dialog box closes and the configured printer is monitored.

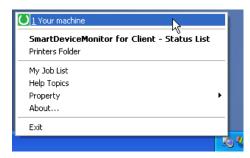


• For details about status icons, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

### Checking the Printer Status

Follow the procedure below to check printer status using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1. Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then click the printer.



The printer status appears in the dialog box.



• For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

## When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

When using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, note the following:

- The network printer can only receive one print job from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client at a time. While
  the network printer is printing, another user cannot access it until the job is finished. In this case,
  SmartDeviceMonitor for Client tries to access the network printer until the retry interval expires.
- If SmartDeviceMonitor for Client cannot access the network printer and times out, it will stop sending
  the print job. In this case, you should cancel the paused status from the print queue window.
   SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will resume access to the network printer. You can delete the print job
  from the print queue window, but canceling a print job printed by the network printer might cause the
  next job sent from another user to be incorrectly printed.
- If a print job sent from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is interrupted and the network printer cancels the job because something went wrong, send the print job again.
- Print jobs sent from another computer do not appear in the print queue window, regardless of protocol.
- If various users send print jobs using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to network printers, the printing
  order might not be the same as that in which the jobs were sent.
- An IP address cannot be used for the IPP port name because the IP address is used for the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port name.

- When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server
  authentication is issued, enter "https://( printer's IP address or host name)/ ". Internet Explorer must
  be installed on your computer. Use the highest version. Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is
  recommended.
- If the [Security Alert] dialog box appears when accessing the printer using IPP to create or configure
  an IPP port, or when printing, install the certificate. To select the certificate store location when using
  Certificate Import Wizard, click [Place all certificates in the following store], and then click [Local
  Computer] under [Trusted Root Certification Authorities].



• For details about SSL settings, consult your network administrator.

# Printer Status Notification by E-Mail

Whenever a paper tray becomes empty or paper jams, a notification e-mail is sent to the registered addresses.

### Mportant ...

Depending on your e-mail application, a phishing warning might appear after you receive an e-mail
message. To prevent phishing warnings appearing after you receive e-mail from a specified sender,
you must add the sender to your e-mail application's exclusion list. For details about how to do this,
see your e-mail application's Help.

You can be notified of the following events:

- Service call.
- Toner is empty.
- Toner is nearly empty.
- Paper has jammed.
- Cover is open.
- Paper tray is empty.
- Paper tray is nearly empty.
- · Paper tray error.
- A paper tray error occurred.
- Output paper tray is full.
- · Unit connection error.
- Duplex unit error.
- Waste toner bottle is full.
- Waste toner bottle is nearly full.
- Service call is successful.
- Memory for file storage is full soon.
- Log error.
- Device access is violated.
- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- 2. In the menu area, click [Configuration].
- 3. Click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.
- 4. Make the following settings:
  - Items in the Reception column: Make the necessary settings for sending and receiving e-mail.

- Items in the SMTP column: Configure the SMTP server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items. You can also perform mail authentication for the SMTP server.
- Items in the POP before SMTP column: Configure the POP server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items. You can also perform mail authentication for the POP server.
- Items in the POP3/IMAP4 column: Configure the POP3 or IMAP4 server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items.
- Items in the E-mail Communication Port column: Configure the port to be used for access to the mail server.
- Items in the E-Mail Notification Account column: Specify these items if you want to use on-demand e-mail notification.
- 5. Click [OK].
- Click [Logout].
- 7. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- For details about the settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

### Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

#### Auto E-mail Notification

- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- 2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [Auto E-mail Notification] on the [Device Settings] area.

The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

- 3. Make the following settings:
  - Items in Notification Message column: You can set this according to your needs, for example, the printer's location, service representative contact information.
  - Items in the Groups to Notify column: E-mail notification addresses can be grouped as required.
  - Items in the Select Groups/Items to Notify column: Select groups for each notification type, such
    as printer status and error.

To make detailed settings for these items, click [Edit] next to [Detailed Settings of Each Item].

- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. Click [Logout].

6. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about the settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.

### Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

#### On-demand E-mail Notification

- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [On-demand E-mail Notification] on the [Device Settings] area.

The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

- 3. Make the following settings:
  - Notification Subject column: Enter a text string to be added to the subject line of return e-mails.
  - Items in Notification Message column: You can set this according to your needs, for example, the printer's location, service representative contact information.
  - Items in the Access Restriction to Information column: Select whether to restrict accesses based on a specific category of information.
  - Items in the Receivable E-mail Address/Domain Name Settings column: Enter an e-mail address
    or domain name to use for requesting information by e-mail and to receive its return e-mail.
- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. Click [Logout].
- 6. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about the settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.

## Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

#### Mail Authentication

You can configure mail authentication to prevent illegal use of the mail server.

#### **SMTP Authentication**

Specify SMTP authentication.

When mail is sent to the SMTP server, authentication is performed using the SMTP AUTH protocol by prompting the mail originator to enter the user name and password. This prevents illegal use of the SMTP server.

- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- 2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.
- 3. Make the following settings in SMTP column:
  - SMTP Server Name: Enter the IP address or host name of the SMTP server
  - SMTP Port No.: Enter the port number used when sending e-mail to the SMTP server.
  - SMTP Authentication: Enable or disable SMTP authentication.
  - SMTP Auth. E-mail Address: Enter the e-mail address.
  - SMTP Auth. User Name: Enter the SMTP account name.
  - SMTP Auth. Password: To set or change the password for SMTP AUTH.
  - SMTP Auth. Encryption: Select whether to encrypt the password or not.

[Encryption]-[Auto Select]: If the authentication method is PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAM-MD5, or DIGEST-MD5.

[Encryption]-[Active]: If the authentication method is CRAM-MD5 or DIGEST-MD5. [Encryption]-[Inactive]: If the authentication method is PLAIN or LOGIN.

- 4. Click [OK]
- 5. Click [Logout].
- 6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

#### **POP before SMTP Authentication**

Select whether to log on to the POP3 server before sending e-mail.

- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- 2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.
- 3. Make the following settings in POP before SMTP column:
  - POP before SMTP: Enable or disable POP before SMTP.
  - POP E-mail Address: Enter the e-mail address.
  - POP User Name: Enter the POP account name.
  - POP Password: To set or change the POP password.
  - Timeout setting after POP Auth.: Enter the time available before connecting to the SMTP server after logging on to the POP server.
- 4. Click [OK].

- 5. Click [Logout].
- 6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

### Sending E-mail Notification

To use on-demand e-mail notification, perform the following configuration tasks in Web Image Monitor.

- 1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
- 2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.
- 3. Make the following settings:
  - E-mail Notification E-mail Address: Enter the address using alphanumeric characters.
  - Receive E-mail Notification: Specify whether to use on-demand e-mail notification.
  - E-mail Notification User Name: Enter the administrator's user name as the mail originator name.
  - E-mail Notification Password: Enter the password of the mail notification user.
- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. Click [Logout].
- 6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

#### Format of on-demand e-mail messages

To use mail notification, you need to send an on-demand e-mail message to this printer.

Using your mail software, enter the following:

ltem	Description
Subject (Referred to as Subject)	Enter a request regarding the device. For details, see the table below.
From (Referred to as From)	Specify a valid mail address. The device information will be sent to the address specified here.



- A mail message must be within 1 MB in size.
- E-mail may be incomplete if sent immediately after power on.

#### Subject field

Format: devicestatus?parameter-name=parameter[&=parameter][& =parameter]...

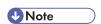


• The Subject field is case-insensitive.

• Parameter names can be written in any order.

### Subject field coding examples

Coding example	Action
devicestatus?request=sysconfig& format=text⟨=en	The device's system configurationinformation will be sent in an English text format.
devicestatus?request=sysconfig	The device's system configurationinformation will be sent in a preset format and language.



- The Subject field is case-insensitive.
- Parameter names can be written in any order.

#### **Parameters**

Parameter	Meaning	Default
request	Information to be obtained	Mandatory
format	Mail format	Mail will be sent in the format presetfor each mail address.
lang	Language for mail body	Mail will be sent in the languagepreset for each mail address.

Parameters specifying the information to be obtained

Information to be obtained	Parameter
System configuration information	sysconfig
Network configuration information	netconfig
Printer configuration information	prtconfig
Supplies information	supply
Device status information	status

Parameters specifying the mail format

Mail format	Parameter
Text	text

Mail format	Parameter
HTML	html
XML	xml



• HTML and XML can be seleceted for subject field, but output is text only.

Parameters that specify the language for mail bodies

Language	Parameter
English	en
French	fr
German	de
Italian	it
Spanish	es
Dutch	nl
Danish	da
Finnish	fi
Norwegian	no
Portuguese	pt
Swedish	SV
Czech	CS
Polish	pl
Hungarian	hu

### 7

# Remote Maintenance by telnet

### 

- Remote Maintenance should be protected so that access is allowed to administrators only.
- The password is the same as the one of Web Image Monitor administrator. When the password is changed using "mshell", other's change also.

### Using telnet

Follow the procedure below to use telnet.

### **Important**

- Only one user at a time can log on to perform remote maintenance.
- If you are using Windows Vista, you must enable the telnet server and telnet client beforehand.
- 1. Use the IP address or the host name of the printer to start telnet.

% telnet "IP address"

2. Enter your user name and password.

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

For user authentication, enter a login user name and password.

For user code authentication, enter a user code in User Name.

- 3. Enter a command.
- 4. Quit telnet.

msh> logout

The configuration message about saving the changes appears.

5. Enter "yes" to save the changes, and then press the [Enter] key.

If you do not want to save the changes, enter "no", and then press the [Enter] key. To make further changes, enter "return" at the command line, and then press the [Enter] key.



- If the message "Can not write NVRAM information" appears, the changes are not saved. Repeat the procedure above.
- When the changes are saved, the network interface board is reset automatically with that changes.
- When the network interface board resets, the print job in print process will be printed. However, print
  jobs in queue will be canceled.
- To use Telnet under Windows Vista, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client must be installed.

### 8021x

Use "8021x" commands to display IEEE 802.1x related information.

### View settings

msh> 8021x

### Configuration

msh> 8021x "parameter"

Parameter	Value configured
eap {tls ttls leap peap} {chap mschap	You can specify the EAP authentication type.
mschapv2   pap   md5   tls }	tls: EAP-TLS (default)
	ttls: EAP-TTLS
	leap: LEAP
	peap: PEAP
	chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, md5, or tls are settings for the phase 2 method, and must be set when using EAP-TTLS or PEAP.
	Do not make these settings when using other EAP authentication types.
	If you select EAP-TTLS, you can select chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, or md5.
	If you select PEAP, you can select mschapv2 or tls.
username "character string"	You can specify the login user name for the Radius server.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes).
	The default is blank.
username2 "character string"	You can specify the phase 2 username for EAP-TTLS/PEAP phase 2 authentication.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes).
	The default is blank.
domain "character string"	You can specify the login domain name for the Radius server.

Parameter	Value configured
	The characters you can enter are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes), but not "@" or "\".
	The default is blank.
password "character string"	You can specify the login for the Radius server.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (128 bytes). The default is blank.
srvcert {on   off}	You can set the server certificate. The default is "off".
imca {on off}	You can enable or disable the certificate when the intermediate certificate authority is present. The default is "off".
srvid "character string"	You can set the server ID and subdomain of the certificate server.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes). The default is blank.
claer {a each command all}	Returns the selected setting to its default value.
	If you specify "all", all settings will be restored to their default values. However, IEEE 802.1x Auth. status (enable or disable) for Ethernet and wireless LAN will not be initialized.

#### access

Use the "access" command to view and configure access control. You can also specify two or more access ranges.

#### View settings

msh> access

### IPv4 configration display

msh> access ID range

### IPv6 configuration display

msh> access ID range6

### IPv6 access mask configuration display

msh> access ID mask6

### -7

### **IPv4** configuration

```
msh> access ID range "start-address end-address"

Example: to specify accessible IPv4 addresses between 192.168.0.10 and 192.168.0.20:

msh> access 1 range 192.168.0.10 192.168.0.20
```

#### **IPv6** configuration

```
msh> access ID range6 "start-address end-address"

Example: to specify accessible IPv6 addresses between 2001:DB8::100 and 2001:DB8::200.

msh> access 1 range6 2001:DB8::100 2001:DB8::200
```

#### IPv6 access mask configuration

```
msh> access ID mask6 "base-address prefixlen"

Example: to specify accessible IPv6 addresses to 2001:DB8::/32

msh> access 1 mask6 2001:DB8:: 32
```

#### Access control initialization

msh> access flush

 Use the "flush" command to restore the default settings so that all access ranges become "0.0.0.0" for IPv4, and "::" for IPv6.



- You can specify each IPv6 entry by either range or mask. For the range parameter, you can select "start-address end-address". For the mask parameter, you can select "baseaddress prefixlen".
- The access range restricts computers from use of the printer by IP address. If you do not need to restrict printing, make the setting "0.0.0.0" for IPv4, and "::" for IPv6.
- Valid ranges must be from lower (start address) to higher (end address).
- For IPv4 and IPv6, you can select an ID number between 1 and 5.
- IPv6 can register and select the range and the mask for each access ranges.
- IPv6 mask ranges between 1 128 can be selected.
- Up to five access ranges can be specified. The entry is invalid if the target number is omitted.
- You cannot send print jobs, or access Web Image Monitor and diprint from a restricted IP address.

### appletalk

Use the "appletalk" command to view and configure AppleTalk parameters.

#### View settings

msh> appletalk

• [2] means "active" and [0] means "inactive".

• The default is [2].

#### **Changing PAP timeout configuration**

msh> appletalk ptimeout value > 0

• Enables print performance improvement.

msh> appletalk ptimeout value = 0

• Disables print performance improvement.

#### authfree

Use the "authfree" command to view and configure AuthFree parameters.

#### View settings

The following command displays the current AuthFree settings:

msh> authfree

 If print job authentication exclusion is not set, authentication exclusion control cannot be displayed.

#### IPv4 address settings

```
msh> authfree "ID" range_addr1 range_addr2
```

#### IPv6 address settings

```
msh> authfree "ID" range6_addr1 range6_addr2
```

#### IPv6 address mask configuration

```
msh> authfree "ID" mask6_addr1 masklen
```

#### Parallel/USB settings

```
msh> authfree [parallel | usb] [on|off]
```

• To enable authfree, set to on. To disable authfree, set to off. Always specify the interface.

#### Authentication exclusion control initialization

```
msh> authfree flush
```

#### autonet

Use the "autonet" command to configure AutoNet parameters.

#### View settings

The following command displays the current AutoNet settings:

msh> autonet

#### Configuration

You can configure AutoNet settings.

msh> autonet {on|off}

• {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".

### Current interface priority configuration display

msh> autonet priority

#### Interface priority configuration

msh> autonet priority "interface\_name"

- You can give interface's AutoNet parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface



- If an interface is not selected, the current interface connection settings remain in effect.
- For details about AutoNet, refer to autonet parameters.

### bonjour

Use the "bonjour" command to display bonjour-related settings.

#### View settings

Bonjour settings are displayed.

msh> bonjour

#### Bonjour service name setting

You can specify the bonjour service name.

msh> bonjour cname "computer name"

- The computer name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- If you do not specify a character string, the current setting is displayed.

#### Bonjour Installation location information setting

You can enter information about the location where the printer is installed.

msh> bonjour location "location"

- Information about location can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
- If you do not specify a character string, current setting is displayed.

#### Setting order of priority for each protocol

You can specify the order of priority for "diprint", "lpr", and "ipp". Smaller numbers indicate higher priority.

```
msh> bonjour diprint [0-99]
msh> bonjour lpr [0-99]
msh> bonjour ipp [0-99]
```

#### IP TTL setting

You can specify the IP TTL (the number of routers a packet can pass through).

```
msh> bonjour ip ttl [1-255]
```

• The default is 255.

#### Resetting the computer name and location information

You can reset the computer name and location information.

```
msh> bonjour clear {cname|location}
```

- cname: Reset the computer name. The default computer name will be displayed when the computer is restarted.
- location: Reset the location information. The previous location information will be deleted.

#### Interface configuration

msh> bonjour linklocal "interface\_name"

- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is selected automatically.
- If many types of interface are installed, configure the interface that communicates with linklocal address.
- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is automatically selected.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

#### **Setting IPP-SSL printing**

msh> bonjour ippport {ipp|ssl}

• If IPP-SSL Printing is set to ssl, the IPP port number will appear as 443, and IPP-SSL printing can be performed with higher security.

 If IPP-SSL Printing is set to ipp, the IPP port number will appear as 631. Port 631 is the port for normal IPP printing.

### btconfig

Use the "btconfig" command to make Bluetooth settings.

#### View settings

Bluetooth settings are displayed.

msh> btconfig

### Mode settings

You can set the Bluetooth operation mode to {private} or {public}.

msh> btconfig {private|public}

• The default is {public}.

#### devicename

Use the "devicename" command to display and change the printer name.

#### View settings

msh> devicename

#### Printer name configuration

msh> devicename name "string"

- Enter a printer name using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Set single names for each printer.

#### Printer name initialization

msh> devicename clear name

• Reset the printer name to its default.

## dhcp

Use the "dhcp" command to configure DHCP settings.

#### View settings

The following command displays the current DHCP settings.

msh> dhcp

### Configuration

You can configure DHCP.

msh> dhcp "interface\_name" {on|off}

- Click {on} to enable dhcp. Click {off} to disable DHCP.
- If the DNS server address and domain name are obtained from DHCP, be sure to click {on}.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

#### Current interface priority configuration display

msh> dhcp priority

#### Interface priority configuration

msh> dhcp priority "interface\_name"

- You can select which interface has DHCP parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.

#### DNS server address selection

msh> dhcp dnsaddr {dhcp|static}

- Specify whether to obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server or use the address set by a user.
- To obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the address set by a user, specify "static".

#### Domain name selection

msh> dhcp domainname {dhcp|static}

- Specify whether to obtain the domain name from the DNS server or use the domain name set by a user.
- To obtain the domain name from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the domain name set by a user, specify "static".

### Reference

• p.367 "Using DHCP"

### dhcp6

Use the "dhcp6" command to display or configure DHCPv6 settings.

#### View settings

The following command displays the current DHCPv6 settings.

msh> dhcp6

#### DHCPv6-lite configuration and display

```
msh> dhcp6 "interface_name" lite {on|off}
```

Viewing and specifying DNS server address selection (obtained from the dhcpv6 server/user specified value)

msh> dhcp6 dnsaddr {dhcp|static}

#### DUID(DHCP unique ID) deletion and display

msh> dhcp6 duid clear

Viewing and specifying the time required to re-obtain the parameter obtained from dhcpv6

msh> dhcp6 ooption lifetime [0-65535]

- It can be entered between 0 and 65535 minutes.
- The default is 60 minutes.
- If you specify "0", you cannot re-obtain the value.

### diprint

The direct printing port enables direct printing from a network-connected computer.

Use the "diprint" command to change direct printing port settings.

#### View settings

The following command displays the current direct printing port settings:

msh> diprint

Example output:

port 9100

timeout=300(sec)

bidirect on

conn multi

apl async

- The "port" specifies the port number of the direct printing port.
- The "bidirect" setting indicates whether the direct printing port is bidirectional or not.

#### **Setting timeout**

msh> diprint timeout [30-5535]

• You can specify the timeout interval to use when the printer is expecting data from the network.

• The default is 300 seconds.

#### Specifying the number of concurrent connections

```
msh> diprint conn {multi|single}
```

- The above command specifies the number of concurrent diprint connections. Specify "multi" for multiple connections or "single" for a single connection.
- The default is "multi".

#### dns

Use the "dns" command to configure or display DNS (Domain Name System) settings.

#### View settings

The following command displays current DNS settings:

msh> dns

#### IPv4 DNS server configuration

The following command enables or disables the IPv4 DNS server address:

```
msh> dns "ID" server "server address"
```

The following command displays a configuration using the IP address 192.168.15.16 on a DNS 1 server:

msh> dns 1 server 192.168.15.16

- You can register IPv4 DNS Server address.
- You can select an ID number between 1 and 3. You can select up to three ID numbers.
- You cannot use "255.255.255.255" as the DNS server address.

#### IPv6 DNS server configuration

The following command enables or disables the IPv4 DNS server address:

```
msh> dns "ID" server6 "server address"
```

- You can register IPv6 DNS Server address.
- The selectable ID number is between 1 and 3. You can select up to 3 ID.

#### Dynamic DNS function setting

msh> dns "interface\_name" ddns {on|off}

- You can set the dynamic DNS function "active" or "inactive".
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

-//
//
//

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

#### Specifying the record overlap operation

msh> dns overlap {update|add}

- You can specify operations performed when records overlap.
- update: To delete old records and register new records.
- add: To add new records and store the old records.
- When CNAME overlaps, it is always changed, irrespective of settings.

#### **CNAME** registration

msh> dns cname {on|off}

- You can specify whether to register CNAME.
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- The CNAME registered is the default name beginning with rnp. CNAME cannot be changed.

#### A records registration

msh> dns arecord {dhcp|own}

- dhcp: You can specify the method of registering an A record when the dynamic DNS function is enabled and DHCP is used.
- own: To register an A record using the printer as the DNS client.

The DNS server address and the domain name already designated are used for the registration.

#### Record updating interval settings

msh> dns interval [1-255]

- You can specify the interval after which records are updated when using the dynamic DNS function.
- The updating interval is specified hourly. It can be entered between 1 and 255 hours.
- The default is 24 hours.

#### resolv.conf display

msh> dns resolv

#### Specifying the protocol when asking names during dual stacking

msh> dns resolv protocol {ipv4|ipv6}

• Appears during dual stacking only.

#### domainname

Use the "domainname" command to display or configure the domain name settings.

You can configure the Ethernet interface, or Wireless LAN interface.

#### View settings

The following command displays the current domain name:

msh> domainname

#### Interface domain configuration

msh> domainname "interface\_name"

#### Setting the Domain Name

msh> domainname "interface\_name" name "domain name"

- A domain name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- The Ethernet interface and Wireless LAN interface will have the same domain name.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface	Interface set
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

#### **Deleting the Domain Name**

msh> domainname "interface\_name" clear name

#### etherauth

Use "Ethernet" command to display or modify the authentication related parameters for Ethernet.

#### View settings

msh> etherauth

#### 802.1x Configuration

msh> etherauth 8021x {on|off}

• {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".

### help

Use the "help" command to display the available command list and the procedures for using those commands.

#### Command list display

msh> help

### Display of procedure for using commands

msh> help "command\_name"

#### hostname

Use the "hostname" command to change the printer name.

#### View settings

msh> hostname

#### **IPv4** Configuration

msh> hostname "interface\_name" "printer\_name"

- Enter the printer name using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- You cannot use a printer name beginning "RNP" (in either upper or lower case).
- The Ethernet interface and Wireless LAN interface will have the same printer name.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.
- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is selected automatically.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

#### Initializing the printer name for each interface

msh>hostname "interface\_name" clear name

### ifconfig

Use the "ifconfig" command to view and configure TCP/IP (IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, default gateway address) for the printer.

#### View settings

msh> ifconfig

### IPv4 configuration

msh> ifconfig "interface\_name" "parameter" "address"

- If you did not enter an interface name, it is automatically set to the Ethernet interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet Interface
wlan	Wireless LAN Interface

The following explains how to configure an IPv4 address 192.168.15.16 on Ethernet interface.

msh> ifconfig ether 192.168.15.16

#### **IPv6** configuration

msh> ifconfig ether inet6 "interface\_name" "printer\_name"

The following explains how to configure a IPv6 address to 2001:DB8::100 with prefix length 64 on the Ethernet interface.

msh> ifconfig ether inet6 2001:DB8::100 64

#### Netmask configuration

msh> ifconfig "interface\_name" netmask "address"

The following explains how to configure a subnet mask 255.255.250 on Ethernet interface.

msh> ifconfig ether netmask 255.255.255.0

#### **Broadcast address configuration**

msh> ifconfig "interface\_name" broadcast "address"

#### Changing the interface

msh> ifconfig "interface" up

 When using the optional wireless LAN interface unit, you can specify either Ethernet or wireless LAN interface.



- To get the above addresses, contact your network administrator.
- Use the default configuration if you cannot obtain setting addresses.
- The IP address, subnet mask and broadcast address are the same as that for the Ethernet interface and wireless LAN interface.
- TCP/IP configuration is the same for both Ethernet and wireless LAN interface. If interfaces are changed, the new interface inherits the configuration.
- Use "Ox" as the initial two letters of a hexadecimal address.

#### info

Use the "info" command to display printer information such as paper tray, output tray, and printer language.

### Printer information display

msh> info



- p.268 "Getting Printer Information over the Network"
- p.274 "Understanding the Displayed Information"

#### ipsec

Use the "ipsec" command to view and configure IPsec settings.

#### Viewing settings

The following command displays the current IPsec settings:

msh> ipsec



• For details about displayed contents, see Security Guide.

#### ipp

Use the "ipp" command to view and configure IPP settings.

#### Viewing settings

The following command displays the current IPP settings:

msh> ipp

#### IPP timeout configuration

Specify how many seconds the computer waits before canceling an interrupted print job. The time can be entered between 30 to 65535 seconds.

msh> ipp timeout [30-65535]

#### IPP user authorization configuration

Use IPP user authorization to restrict users to print with IPP. The default is "off".

msh> ipp auth {basic|digest|off}

- User authorization settings are "basic" and "digest".
- If user authorization is specified, register a user name. You can register up to 10 users.

### IPP user name configuration

```
Configure IPP users according to the following messages:
```

```
msh> ipp user
```

The following message appears:

```
msh> Input user number (1 to 10):
```

Enter the number, user name, and password.

```
msh> IPP user name:user1
```

```
msh> IPP :*****
```

After configuring the settings, the following message appears:

User configuration changed.

#### ipv6

Use the "ipv6" command to display and configure IPv6 settings.

#### **View Setting**

msh> ipv6

#### IPv6 stateless address

```
msh> ipv6 stateless {on|off}
```

If "on" is selected, IPv6 requests information required for maintaining stateful connection to the router for as long as the printer power is turned on. This setting allows information from the router to be obtained constantly, and periodically refreshes the effective period of the stateless address.

#### lpr

Use the "lpr" command to view and configure LPR settings.

#### **View Setting**

msh> 1pr

#### Checking host name when deleting the job

```
msh> lpr chkhost {on|off}
```

If "on" is selected, you can delete print jobs only from the IP address of the host that sent the print job. If LPR is disabled, you can also delete print jobs sent from IP addresses other than that of the host.

#### **Printer Error Detection Function**

```
lpr prnerrchk {on|off}
```

If you set this to "on", the printer stops receiving data and will wait until the error is resolved before continuing processing a job.

#### netware

Use the "netware" command to view and configure the NetWare settings such as the print server name or file server name.

#### NetWare Printer Server Names

msh> netware pnamecharacter string

• Enter the NetWare print server name using up to 47 characters.

#### **NetWare File Server Names**

msh> netware fname character string

• Enter the NetWare file server name using up to 47 characters.

#### **Encap type**

```
msh> netware encap {802.3|802.2|snap|ethernet2|auto}
```

#### Remote Printer Number

msh> netware rnum [0-254]

• The default is 0.

#### **Timeout**

msh> netware timeout [3-255]

• The default is 15.

#### Printer server mode

```
msh> netware mode pserver
msh> netware mode ps
```

#### Remote printer mode

```
msh> netware mode rprinter
msh> netware mode rp
```

#### NDS context name

```
msh> netware context "character string"
```

#### **SAP** interval

```
msh> netware "sap\_interval[0-3600]"
```

It can be entered between 0 and 3600 seconds.

#### Setting login mode for file server

msh> netware login server

#### Setting login mode for NDS tree

msh> netware login tree

### Setting login mode for NDS tree name

msh> netware tree "NDS tree name"

#### File transfer protocol

msh> netware trans {ipv4pri|ipxpri|ipv4|ipx}

• If you do not specify the protocol, the current setting is displayed.

Protocol	Set Protocol
ipv4pri	IPv4+IPX(IPv4)
ipxpri	IPv4+IPX(IPX)
ipv4	IPv4
ірх	IPX

### passwd

Use the "passwd" command to change the remote maintenance password.

#### Changing the

msh> passwd

- Enter the current password.
- Enter the new password.
- Renter the new password to confirm it.

#### Changing the password of the administrators using the Supervisor

msh> passwd {Administrator ID}

- Enter the new password.
- Renter the new password to confirm it.



- Be sure not to forget or lose the password.
- The password can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters. s are case-sensitive. For example, "R" is not the same as "r".

#### pathmtu

Use the "pathmtu" command to display and configure the PathMTU Discovery service function.

#### View settings

msh> pathmtu

### Configuration

msh> pathmtu {on|off}

- The default is "on".
- If the MTU size of the sent data is larger than the router's MTU, the router will declare it
  impassable, and communication will fail. If this happens, selecting the "pathmtu" to "off" optimizes
  the MTU size and prevents data output failure.
- Depending on the environment, information might not be obtained from the router, and communication will fail. If this happens, select the "pathmtu" to "off".

### prnlog

Use the "prnlog" command to obtain printer log information.

#### Print logs display

msh> prnlog

• Display previous print jobs.

msh> prnlog "ID Number"

 Specify the ID number of the displayed print log information to display additional details about a print job.

## Reference

• p.274 "Understanding the Displayed Information"

### rhpp

Use the "rhpp" command to view and configure RHPP settings.

#### View settings

msh> rhpp

#### Changing rhpp port number

msh> rhpp [1024-65535]

• The default is 59100.

#### **Setting timeout**

msh> rhpp timeout [30-65535]

• The default is 300 seconds.





• "RHPP" is an abbreviation of "Reliable Host Printing Protocol", which is a manufacturer-original printing protocol.

#### route

Use the "route" command to view and control the routing table.

### Specified route information display

msh> route get "destination"

• Specify the IPv4 address to destination.

"0.0.0.0" cannot be specified as destination address.

#### Enabling/disabling specified IPv4 destination

msh> route active {host|net} "destination" {on|off}

• If you do not specify {host | net}, the host setting is automatically selected.

#### Adding IPv4 Routing Table

msh> route add {host|net} "destination" "gateway"

- Adds a host or network route to "destination", and a gateway address to "gateway" in the table.
- Specify the IPv4 address to destination and gateway.
- If you do not specify {host | net}, the host setting is selected automatically.
- You cannot specify"0.0.0.0" as the destination address.

#### Setting the Default IPv4 Gateway

msh> route add default "gateway"

#### Deleting specified IPv4 destination from Routing Table

msh> route delete {host|net} "destination"

- If you do not specify {host | net}, the host setting is automatically selected.
- IPv4 address of destination can be specified.

#### Setting IPv6 Default Gateway

msh> route add6 default "gateway"

#### Adding a specified IPv6 destination to Routing Table

msh> route add6 "destination" "prefixlen[1-128]" "gateway"

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.
- If the prefix of the address is between 1 and 127, the network is selected. If the prefix of the address is 128, the host is selected.
- You cannot register a record that has the same destination and prefix as a registered record.

#### Deleting a specified IPv6 destination from Routing Table

```
msh> route delete6 "destination" "prefixlen"
```

Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

#### Display information about a specified IPv6 route information

```
msh> route get6 "destination"
```

• Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

#### Enabling/disabling a specified IPv6 destination

```
msh> route active6 "destination" "prefixlen[1-128]" {on|off}
```

#### Route initialization

msh> route flush



- The maximum number of IPv4 routing tables is 16.
- The maximum number of IPv6 routing tables is 2.
- Set a gateway address when communicating with devices on an external network.
- The same gateway address is shared by all interfaces.
- "Prefixlen" is a number between 1 and 128.

#### set

Use the "set" command to set the protocol information display "active" or "inactive".

#### View settings

The following command displays protocol information (active/inactive).

```
msh> set ipv4
```

msh> set ipv6

msh> set appletalk

msh> set netware

msh> set smb

msh> set protocol

When protocol is specified, information about TCP/IP, AppleTalk, NetWare and SMB appears.

msh> set lpr

msh> set 1pr6

msh> set ftp

```
msh> set ftp6
msh> set rsh
msh> set rsh6
msh> set diprint
msh> set diprint6
msh> set web
msh> set snmp
msh> set ssl
msh> set ss16
msh> set nrs
msh> set rfu
msh> set rfu6
msh> set ipp
msh> set ipp6
msh> set http
msh> set http6
msh> set bonjour
msh> set bonjour6
msh> set nbt
msh> set ssdp
msh> set ssh
msh> set sftp
msh> set sftp6
msh> set wsdev
msh> set wsdev6
msh> set wsprn
msh> set rhpp
msh> set rhpp6
```

#### Configuration

• Enter "up" to enable protocol, and enter "down" to disable protocol.

You can set the protocol to "active" or "inactive".

```
msh> set ipv4 {up|down}
```

- If you disable IPv4, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via IPv4.
- Disabling IPv4 also disables lpr, ftp, rsh, diprint, web, snmp, ssl, ipp, http, bonjour, wsdev, and sftp.

```
msh> set ipv6 {up|down}
```

- If you disable IPv6, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via IPv6.
- Disabling IPv6 also disables lpr6, ftp6, rsh6, diprint6, ssl6, ipp6, http6, bonjour 6, wsdev, and sftp6.

```
msh> set ipsec {up|down}
msh> set appletalk {up|down}
msh> set netware {up|down}
msh> set smb {up|down}
msh> set lpr {up|down}
msh> set 1pr6 {up|down}
msh> set ftp {up|down}
msh> set ftp6 {up|down}
msh> set rsh {up|down}
msh> set rsh6 {up|down}
msh> set diprint {up|down}
msh> set diprint6 {up|down}
msh> set web {up|down}
msh> set snmp {up|down}
msh> set ssl {up|down}
msh> set ss16 {up|down}
```

• If Secured Sockets Layer (SSL, an encryption protocol) function is not available for the printer, you cannot use the function by enabling it.

```
msh> set nrs {up|down}
msh> set rfu {up|down}
msh> set rfu6 {up|down}
msh> set ipp {up|down}
msh> set ipp6 {up|down}
msh> set http {up|down}
msh> set http {up|down}
```

```
msh> set bonjour {up|down}
msh> set bonjour6 {up|down}
msh> set ssh {up|down}
msh> set ssdp {up|down}
msh> set nbt {up|down}
msh> set sftp {up|down}
msh> set sftp {up|down}
msh> set sftp6 {up|down}
msh> set wsdev {up|down}
msh> set wsdev6 {up|down}
```

 If "wsdev" and "wsdev6" are enabled simultaneously, both appear as "up" on the protocol information display, but both use IPv4 for WS-Device and WS-Printer.

```
msh> set wsprn {up|down}
msh> set rhpp {up|down}
msh> set rhpp6 {up|down}
```

#### show

Use the "show" command to display network interface board configuration settings.

#### View settings

msh> show

• If "-p" is added, you can view settings one by one.

# Reference

• p.274 "Understanding the Displayed Information"

## slp

Use "slp" command to view and configure SLP settings.

```
msh> slp ttl "ttl_val[1-255]"
```

- You can search the NetWare server using SLP in the PureIP environment of NetWare 5/5.1. Using the "slp" command, you can configure the value of TTL which can be used by SLP multicast packet.
- The default value of TTL is 1. A search is executed only within a local segment. If the router does not support multicast, the settings are not available even if the TTL value is increased.
- The acceptable TTL value is between 1 and 255.

#### smb

Use the "smb" command to configure or delete the computer or workgroup name for SMB.

### Computer name settings

```
msh> smb comp "computer name"
```

- Set computer name using up to 15 characters.
- Names beginning with "RNP" or "rnp" cannot be entered.

#### Working group name settings

```
msh> smb group "work group name"
```

• Set workgroup name using up to 15 characters.

#### **Comment settings**

```
msh> smb comment "comment"
```

• Set comment using up to 31 characters.

#### Notify print job completion

```
msh> smb notif {on|off}
```

• To notify print job completion, specify "on". Otherwise, specify "off".

#### Deleting computer name

```
msh> smb clear comp
```

## **Deleting group name**

```
msh> smb clear group
```

#### **Deleting comment**

```
msh> smb clear comment
```

#### View protocol

```
msh> smb protocol
```

#### snmp

Use the "snmp" command to display and edit SNMP configuration settings such as the community name.

#### View settings

msh> snmp

• Default access settings 1 is as follows:

Community name:public

IPv4 address:0.0.0.0

IPv6 address:::

7

IPX address:00000000:00000000000

Access type:read-only

Effective Protocol: IPv4/IPv6/IPX

• Default access settings 2 is as follows:

Community name:admin

IPv4 address:0.0.0.0

IPv6 address:::

IPX address:00000000:000000000000

Access type:read-write

Effective Protocol: IPv4/IPv6/IPX

- If "-p" is added, you can view settings one by one.
- To display the current community, specify its registration number.

#### Display

msh> snmp ?

#### Community name configuration

msh> snmp "number" name "community\_name"

- You can configure ten SNMP access settings numbered 1-10.
- The printer cannot be accessed from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or SmartDeviceMonitor for Client if "public" is not registered in numbers 1-10. When changing the community name, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and SNMP Setup Tool to correspond with printer settings.
- The community name can be entered using up to 15 characters.

#### Deleting community name

msh> snmp "number" clear name

#### Access type configuration

msh> snmp "number" type "access\_type"

Access type	Type of access permission
no	not accessible
read	read only
write	read and write
trap	user is notified of trapmessages

# 1

#### **Protocol configuration**

Use the following command to set protocols "active" or "inactive": If you set a protocol "inactive", all access settings for that protocol are disabled.

msh> snmp {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}

- Specify "ipv4" for IPv4, "ipv6" for IPv6, or "ipx" for IPX/SPX.
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- All protocols cannot be turned off concurrently.

## Configuration of protocol for each registration number

```
msh> snmp "number" active {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}
```

 To change the protocol of access settings, use the following command. However, if you have disabled a protocol with the above command, activating it here has no effect.

## Access configuration

```
msh> snmp "number" {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} "address"
```

- You can configure a host address according to the protocol used.
- The network interface board accepts requests only from hosts that have IPv4, IPv6, and IPX
  addresses with access types of "read-only" or "read-write". Enter "0" to have network interface
  board accept requests from any host without requiring a specific type of access.
- Enter a host address to deliver "trap" access type information to.
- To specify IPv4 or IPv6, enter "ipv4" or "ipv6" followed by a space, and then the IPv4 or IPv6
  address.
- To specify IPX/SPX, enter "ipx" followed by a space, the IPX address followed by a decimal, and then the MAC address of the network interface board.

#### sysLocation configuration

```
msh> snmp location
```

#### **Deleting sysLocation**

msh> snmp clear location

#### sysContact setting

msh> snmp contact

#### **Deleting sysContact**

msh> snmp clear contact

#### SNMP v1v2 function configuration

msh> snmp v1v2 {on|off}

• Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable.

#### SNMP v3 function configuration

msh> snmp v3 {on|off}

• Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable.

#### **SNMP TRAP configuration**

```
msh > snmp trap{v1|v2|v3} {on|off}
```

• Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable.

#### Remote Configuration Authorization configuration

```
msh> snmp remote {on|off}
```

• Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable the SNMP v1v2 setting.

#### SNMP v3 TRAP configuration display

```
msh> snmp v3trap
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5]
```

• If a number from 1 to 5 is entered, settings are displayed for that number only.

#### Configuring a sending address for SNMP v3 TRAP

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} "address"
```

#### Configuring a sending protocol for SNMP v3 TRAP

msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] active {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}

#### Configuring a user account for SNMP v3 TRAP

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] account "account_name"
```

• Enter an account name using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

#### Deleting an SNMP v3 TRAP user account

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] clear account
```

#### Configuring an SNMP v3 encryption algorithm

```
msh> snmp v3auth {md5|sha1}
```

#### Configuring SNMP v3 encryption

```
msh> snmp v3priv {auto|on}
```

- Set "auto" for automatic encryption configuration.
- If you select "on", plain-text communication becomes impossible only encrypted communication is possible.



• "Encrypted communication" means an encrypted password is set on the printer.

#### sntp

The printer clock can be synchronized with a NTP server clock using Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP). Use the "sntp" command to change SNTP settings.

# 7

#### View settings

msh> sntp

#### NTP IPv4 server address configuration

You can specify the IPv4 address of the NTP server.

msh> sntp server "IPv4\_address"

#### NTP hostname configuration

You can specify the hostname of the NTP server.

msh> sntp server "hostname"

#### **Deleting NTP server configuration**

msh> sntp server clear

#### Interval configuration

msh> sntp interval "polling\_time"

- You can specify the interval at which the printer synchronizes with the operator-specified NTP server. The default is 60 minutes.
- The interval can be entered from 0, or between 15 and 10,080 minutes.
- If you set 0, the printer synchronizes with the NTP server only when you turn the printer on. After that, the printer does not synchronize with the NTP server.

#### Time-zone configuration

msh> sntp timezone "±hour\_time"

• You can specify the time difference between the printer clock and NTP server clock. The values are between -12:00 and +13:00.



• You can only select either the address or host name for the ntp server.

# spoolsw

Use the "spoolsw" command to view and configure Job Spool settings.

You can only specify diprint, trap, lpr, ipp, ftp, sftp, ws-printer, and smb (TCP/IP) protocol.

 The "spoolsw" command for configuring Job Spool settings is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

#### View settings

The Job Spool setting appears.

msh> spoolsw

#### Job Spool setting

```
msh> spoolsw spool {on|off}
```

• Specify "on" to enable Job Spool, or "off" to disable it.

#### Resetting Job spool setting

```
msh> spoolsw clear job {on|off}
```

When the printer power is cut during job spooling, this determines whether to reprint the spooled
job.

## **Protocol configuration**

```
msh> spoolsw diprint {on|off}
msh> spoolsw lpr {on|off}
msh> spoolsw ipp {on|off}
msh> spoolsw smb {on|off}
msh> spoolsw ftp {on|off}
msh> spoolsw ftp {on|off}
msh> spoolsw sftp {on|off}
msh> spoolsw {on|off}
```

# ssdp

Use the "ssdp" command to view and configure SSDP settings.

#### View settings

```
msh> ssdp
```

#### Setting effective time

```
msh> ssdp profile [1801-86400]
The default is 10800 seconds.
```

#### Advertise packet TTL settings

```
msh> ssdp ttl [1-255]
```

The default is 4.

#### ssh

Use the "ssh" command to view and configure SSH settings.

#### View settings

msh> ssh

#### Data compression communication settings

msh> ssh compression {on|off}

# SSH/SFTP communication port setting

msh> ssh port [22, 1024-65535]

The default is 22.

The default is "on".

#### SSH/SFTP communication timeout setting

msh> ssh timeout [0-65535]

The default is 300.

### SSH/SFTP communication login timeout setting

msh> ssh logintimeout [0-65535]

The default is 300.

#### Setting an open key for SSH/SFTP

msh> ssh genkey {512|768|1024} "character string"

Create an open key for SSH/SFTP communication.

Usable characters are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes) other than "0".

The default key length is 1024, and the character string is blank.

If you do not specify this parameter, an open key with the default value will be created.

#### Deleting open key for ssh/sftp communication

msh> ssh delkey



• If you do not specify a character string, current setting is displayed.

#### status

Use the "status" command to display the printer status.

#### view messages

msh> status

# **■** Reference

• p.268 "Getting Printer Information over the Network"

# syslog

Use the "syslog" command to display the information stored in the printer's system log.

#### View message

msh> syslog



p.286 "Message List"

#### upnp

Use the "upnp" command to display and configure the universal plug and play.

#### **Public URL display**

msh> upnp url

#### **Public URL configuration**

```
msh> upnp url "string"
```

• Enter the URL string in the character string.

#### web

Use the "web" command to display and configure parameters on Web Image Monitor.

#### **View Settings**

msh> web

#### **URL Configuration**

You can set URLs linked by clicking [URL] on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web "ID" url http:// "The URL or IP address you want to register"/
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID as the number corresponding to the URL. Up to two URLs can be registered and specified.

#### Resetting URLs registered as link destinations

```
msh> web "ID" clear url
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID as the corresponding number to the URL.

## Link name configuration

You can enter the name for URL that appears on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web "ID" name "Name you want to display"
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID the corresponding number to the link name.

#### Resetting URL names registered as link destinations

```
msh> web "ID" clear name
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID as the number corresponding to the link name.

## **Help URL Configuration**

You can set URLs linked by clicking "?" on Web Image Monitor.

msh> web help http://"Help URL or IP address"/help/

# **Resetting Help URL**

msh> web clear help

# wiconfig

Use the "wiconfig" command to make settings for Wireless LAN.

#### View settings

msh> wiconfig

# **View Wireless LAN settings**

msh> wiconfig cardinfo

• If Wireless LAN is not working correctly, its information is not displayed.

## Configuration

msh> wiconfig "parameter"

Parameter	Value configured
mode {ap 802.11adhoc}	You can set the infrastructure mode (ap) or the 802.11 Ad hoc mode (802.11 adhoc).  The default is the infrastructure mode.
ssid "ID value"	You can specify an SSID in infrastructure mode. The characters you can enter in the SSID string are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes). If you do not specify a character string, the printer will connect to the nearest access point.  The default SSID is blank.
channel " <b>channel no.</b> "	In 802.11 ad hoc mode, you can select a channel between 1 and 14, or 36, 40, 44, or 48.  Be sure to set the same channel for all ports that will transmit and receive data.  The default is "11".
key " <b>key value</b> " val [1   2   3   4]	You can specify the WEP key when entering in hexadecimal.

/

Parameter	Value configured
	With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 10 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 26 digit hexadecimals.
	Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with "val".
	When a WEP is specified by key, the WEP specified by key phrase is overwritten.
	To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. Put "Ox"on the front of WEP key.
	You can omit the numbers with "val". The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions. The default is blank.
keyphrase "phrase" val [1   2   3   4]	You can specify the WEP key when entering in ASCII.
	With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 5 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 13 digit hexadecimals.
	Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with "val".
	When a WEP is specified by key phrase, the WEP specified by key is overwritten.
	To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other.
	You can omit the numbers with "val". The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions. The default is blank.
encval [1   2   3   4]	You can specify which of the four WEP keys is used for packet encoding. "1" is set if a number is not specified.
wepauth {open shared}	You can set an authorization mode when using WEP. The specified value and authorized mode are as follows:
	open: open system authorized (default)
	shared: shared key authorized rate

Parameter	Value configured
security {none wep wpa}	You can specify the security mode. none: No encryption(default) wep: WEP encryption wpa: WPA encryption
wpaenc {tkip ccmp}	You can specify WPA encryption key when using WPA encryption. tkip: TKIP ccmp: CCMP (AES) (default)
wpaauth {wpapsk wpa wpa2psk wpa2}	You can specify the WPA authentication mode when using WPA encryption. wpapsk: WPA-PSK authentication(default) wpa: WPA authentication wpa2psk: WPA2-PSK authentication wpa2: WPA2 authentication
psk "character string"	You can specify the Pre-Shared key.  Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (8 to 63 bytes).  The default is blank.
eap {tls ttls leap peap} {chap mschap mschap mschapv2 pap md5 tls}	You can specify the EAP authentication type. tls: EAP-TLS (default) ttls: EAP-TLS leap: LEAP peap: PEAP chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, md5, or tls are settings for the phase 2 method, and must be set when using EAP-TTLS or PEAP. Do not make these settings when using other EAP authentication types. If you select EAP-TTLS, you can select chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, or md5. If you select PEAP, you can select mschapv2 or tls.

Parameter	Value configured
username "character string"	You can specify the login user name for the Radius server.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes).
	The default is blank.
username2 "character string"	You can specify the phase 2 username for EAP-TTLS/PEAP phase 2 authentication.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes).
	The default is blank.
domain "character string"	You can specify the login domain name for the Radius server.
	The characters you can enter are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes), but not "@" or "\".
	The default is blank.
password "character string"	You can specify the login for the Radius server.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (128 bytes). The default is blank.
srvcert {on   off}	You can set the server certificate. The default is "off".
imca {on off}	You can enable or disable the certificate when the intermediate certificate authority is present. The default is "off".
srvid "character string"	You can set the server ID and subdomain of the certificate server.
	Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e(128 bytes). The default is blank.
connectinfo	Obtains connection information.
claer {a each command all}	Returns the selected setting to its default value.
	If you specify "all", all settings will be restored to their default values.

Parameter	Value configured
miccheck {on off}	You can enable or disable the MIC check function.
	The default setting is "On" (enabled).
	If you specify "Off", you cannot perform MIC checks. We recommend you specify "On" for the MIC check function when using this printer.

#### wins

Use the "wins" command to configure WINS server settings.

#### Viewing settings

msh> wins

• If the IPv4 address obtained from DHCP differs from the WINS IPv4 address, the DHCP address is the valid address.

#### Configuration

msh> wins "interface\_name" {on|off}

- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

#### Address configuration

Use the following command to configure a WINS server IP address:

wins "interface\_name" {primary|secondary} "IP address"

- Use the "primary" command to configure a primary WINS server IP address.
- Use the "secondary" command to configure a secondary WINS server IP address.
- Do not use "255.255.255.255" as the IP address.

#### NBT (NetBIOS over TCP/IP) Scope ID Selection

You can specify the NBT scope ID.

msh> wins "interface\_name" scope "scope ID"

- The scope ID can be entered using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the wireless LAN interface unit is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	Wireless LAN interface

# wsmfp

Use the "wsmfp" command to view and configure WS-MFP settings.

#### Viw settings

msh> wsmfp

#### **Comment settings**

msh> wsmfp comments "comment"

• If you do not specify a comment, current setting is displayed.

#### **Location configuration**

mah> wsmfp location "location"

• If you do not specify a comment, current setting is displayed.

#### **Presentation URL configuration**

msh> wsmfp url "URL"

• Ebter the URL string in the "URL".

#### **WS-Device TCP port configuration**

msh> wsmfp devport "port\_number"

• The Default is 53000.

#### **WS-Printer TCP port configuration**

msh> wsmfp prnport "port\_number"

• The Default is 53001.

#### Timeout configuration

msh> wsmfp prntimeout [30-65535]

• The default is 900 seconds.

#### Comment initialization

msh> wsmfp clear comments

# I

## Location initialization

msh> wsmfp clear location

# **Presentation URL initialization**

msh> wsmfp clear url

# **SNMP**

Using the SNMP manager, you can get information about the printer.

The SNMP agent operating on UDP and IPX is incorporated into the built-in Ethernet board and optional wireless LAN interface unit of this printer.

This printer also supports SNMPv3, which increases user authentication, data encryption, and access control security.

To encrypt communication by SNMPv3, you must specify the printer's encrypted password.



 If you changed the printer's community name, change the configuration of the connected computer accordingly, using SNMP Setup Tool. For details, see SNMP Setup Tool Help.

The default community names are [public] and [admin]. You can get MIB information using these community names.

#### Start SNMP Setup Tool

• Windows 2000:

Click the [Start] button.

Point to [SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin] on the [Programs] menu.

Click [SNMP Setup Tool].

Windows XP/Vista:

Click the [Start] button.

Point to [SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin] on the [All Programs] menu.

Click [SNMP Setup Tool].

# Getting Printer Information over the Network

This section explains details of each item displayed in the printer status and information.

# **Current Printer Status**

This section explains how you can check the printer's status and the items displayed. Depending on the options installed on the printer, some items might not be displayed.

- UNIX: Use the "lpq" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "status" command.

Messages	Description
Adjusting	The printer is initializing or calibrating.
Canceling Job	The job is being reset.
Cover Open: Front/Left	The front cover or left cover is open.
Cover Open: Top	The top cover is open.
Current Job Suspended	Printing is suspended.
Empty: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Cyan Toner	The cyan toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Magenta Toner	The magenta toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Yellow Toner	The yellow toner cartridge is almost empty.
Energy Saver Mode	The printer is in Energy Saver Mode.
Error: Ethernet Board	An Ethernet board error has occurred.
Error: HDD Board	A hard disk drive board error has occurred.
Error: Optional Font	An error has occurred in the font file of the printer.
Error: Optional RAM	An error has occurred in the optional memory unit.
Error: Parallel I/F Board	An error has occurred in the parallel interface.
Error: PDL	An error has occurred in the page description language.
Error: Rem. Certificate Renewal	An error has occurred in the remote sever renewal.

1

Messages	Description
Error: USB Interface	An error has occurred in the USB interface.
Error: Wireless Board	An error has occurred in the wireless interface board.
Error: Wireless Card	Wireless card is not inserted during start up, or the wireless interface unit or the wireless card is taken out after start up.
Full: Log Data Capacity	The log data capacity is full.
Full: Standard Tray	Standard output tray is full.
Full: Waste Toner	Waste toner is full.
Hex Dump Mode	It is a hex dump mode.
Independent-supplier Toner	Toner that is not recommended is set.
Jobs Suspended	All jobs are suspended.
Loading Toner	Toner is being supplied.
Log Data Transfer failed	Log transfer has failed.
Low: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Cyan Toner	The cyan toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Magenta Toner	The magenta toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Low: Yellow Toner	The yellow toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Mismatch: Paper Size	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size.
Mismatch: Paper Size and Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size and type.
Mismatch: Paper Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected type.
Near Replacing: Black PCU	Prepare the new black photoconductor unit.
Near Replacing: Color PCU	Prepare the new color photoconductor unit.

Messages	Description
Near Replacing: Maintenance Kit	Prepare new Maintenance Kit.
Near Replacing: Transfer Unit	Prepare the new transfer unit.
Nearly Full: Log Data Capacity	The log is nearing data capacity.
Nearly Full: Waste Toner	Waste toner bottle is nearly full.
No Paper: Selected Tray	There is no paper in specified tray.
No Paper: Tray 1	There is no paper in tray 1.
No Paper: Tray 2	There is no paper in tray 2.
No Paper: Tray 3	There is no paper in tray 3.
No Paper: Tray 4	There is no paper in tray 4.
Not Detected: Black Toner	Black toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Cyan Toner	Cyan toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Duplex Feed Unit	The duplex unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Fusing Unit	The fusing unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Input Tray	The paper feed tray is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Magenta Toner	Magenta toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (C)	The photoconductor unit (cyan) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (K)	The photoconductor unit (black) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (M)	The photoconductor unit (magenta) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (Y)	The photoconductor unit (yellow) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Transfer Unit	The transfer unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 1	Tray 1 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 2	Tray 2 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 3	Tray 3 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 4	Tray 4 is not correctly set.

Messages	Description
Not Detected: WasteToner Bottle	Waste toner bottle is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Yellow Toner	Yellow toner is not correctly set.
Offline	Printer is offline.
Paper Misfeed: Duplex Unit	The paper has jammed in the duplex unit.
Paper Misfeed: Internal/Output	The paper has jammed in the internal or output tray.
Printing	Printing is in progress.
Processing	Data is being processed.
Proxy Address / Port Incorrect	The proxy address and port setting is incorrect.
Proxy User / Password Incorrect	The proxy user name and password setting is incorrect.
Ready	The printer is ready to print.
Replace Maintenance Kit	It is time to replace Maintenance Kit.
Replace Black PCU	It is time to replace the black photoconductor unit.
Replace Int. Transfer Unit	It is time to replace the transfer unit.
Replace PCU (Color)	It is time to replace the photoconductor unit (color).
Replace Transfer Unit	It is time to replace the transfer cleaning unit.
SD Card Authentication failed	SD card authentication failed.
Supplies Order Call failed	The supply order call has failed.
Tray Error: Duplex Printing	Selected paper tray cannot be used for duplex printing.
Warming Up	The printer is warming up.

# **U** Note

- For details about UNIX commands, see UNIX Supplement.
- Check the error contents that may be printed in the configuration page. For details about printing a configuration page, see "List/Test Print Menu"

# **■** Reference

• p.163 "List/Test Print Menu"

# **Printer Configuration**

You can check the printer configuration using telnet.

This section explains the checking procedure for input/output tray and printer language.

- UNIX: Use the "info" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "info" command.

## **Input Tray**

ltem	Description	
No.	ID number of the paper tray	
Name	Name of the paper tray	
PaperSize	Size of paper loaded in the paper tray	
Status	Current status of the paper tray	
	Normal: Normal	
	NoInputTray: No tray	
	PaperEnd: No paper	

#### **Output Tray**

Item	Description	
No.	ID number of the output tray	
Name	Name of the output tray	
Status	Current status of the output tray	
	Normal: Normal	
	PaperExist: Paper exist	
	OverFlow: Paper is full	
	Error: Other errors	

## **Printer Language**

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the printer language used by the printer
Name	Name of the printer language used in the printer
Version	Version of the printer language

7





• For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

# **Understanding the Displayed Information**

This section explains how to read status information returned by the network interface board.

# Print Job Information

Use the following command to display print job information:

- UNIX: Use the "info" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "info" command.

ltem	Description	
Rank	Print job status.	
	Active	
	Printing or preparing for printing.	
	• 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th	
	Waiting to be transferred to the printer.	
Owner	Print request user name.	
Job	Print request number.	
Files	The name of the document.	
Total Size	The size of the data (spooled).	
	The default is 0 bytes.	



• For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

# **Print Log Information**

This is a record of the most recent jobs printed.

Use the following command to display print log information:

- UNIX: Use the "prnlog" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- telnet: Use the "prnlog" command.

7/

ltem	Description	
ID	Print request ID.	
User	Print request user name.	
Page	Number of pages printed	
Result	Print Request Result  Communication Result  OK  Print was completed normally. However, the print result may not be as required due to printer problems.  NG  Printing was not completed normally.  Canceled  An "rcp", "rsh", or "lpr" command print request was canceled,	
	possibly due to the printing application. Not applicable to the "ftp" or "rprinter" command.	
Time	Time the print requested was received.  Time of print request reception	
User ID (when designating Job ID on telnet)	Printer driver-configured User ID.  Appears when the print request ID is specified.	
JobName (when designating Job ID on telnet)	Name of the document for printing  Appears when the print request ID is specified.	



• For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

# Configuring the Network Interface Board

Use the following command to display network interface board settings:

• telnet: Use the "show" command.

ltem	Description	
Common		

ltem		Description
	Mode	
	Protocol Up/Down	Protocol Settings
	AppleTalk	
	IPv4	
	IPv6	
	IPsec	
	NetWare	
	SMB	
	PictBridge	
	Device Up/Down	Device Settings
	Parallel	
	USB	
	Bluetooth	
	Ethernet interface	
	Syslog priority	
	NVRAM version	
	Device name	
	Comment	
	Location	
	Contact	
	Soft switch	
Apı	oleTalk	AppleTalk settings
	Mode	
	Net	
	Object	

	ltem	Description
	Туре	
	Zone	
TCI	P/IP	TCP/IP settings
	Mode(IPv4)	
	Mode(IPv6)	
	ftp	
	lpr	
	rsh	
	telnet	
	diprint	
	web	
	http	
	ftpc	
	snmp	
	ірр	
	autonet	
	bonjour	
	ssl	
	nrs	
	rfu	
	nbt	
	ssdp	
	ssh	
	sftp	
	WS-Device	

ltem		Description
	WS-Print	
	rhpp	
IPv4	ļ	
	DHCP	
	Address	
	Netmask	
	Broadcast	
	Gateway	
IPv6	)	
	Stateless	
	Manual	
	Gateway	
	EncapType	
	DHCPv6-lite	
	DUID	
	DHCPv6 option lifetime	
IPse	С	
	Manual Mode	
	Excluded Protocol	
	https	
	dns	
	dhcp	
	wins	
Enco	арТуре	
Hos	t name	

	ltem	Description
	DNS Domain	
	Access Control	Access Control settings
	IPv4	X can be set between 1 and 5.
	AccessEntry[X]	
	IPv6	
	AccessEntry[X]	X can be set between 1 and 5.
	SNTP Server	Time settings
	Time Zone	
	SNTP Server polling time	
	SYSLOG server	Websys settings
	Home page URL1	
	Home page linkname l	
	Home page URL2	
	Home page linkname2	
	Help page URL	
	IPDS Port	
	IPDS timeout	
	RHPP Port	
	RHPP timeout	
Net	Ware	
	EncapType	
	RPRINTER number	
	Print server name	
	File server name	
	Context name	

ltem		ltem	Description
	Switch		
		Mode	
		NDS/Bindery	
		Packet negotiation	
		Login Mode	
	Prir	nt job timeout	
	Pro	tocol	
	SA	P interval time	
	ND	OS Tree Name	
	Tra	nsfer Protocol	
SM	SMB		SMB settings
	Sw	itch	
		Mode	
		Direct print	
		Notification	
	Wo	orkgroup name	
	Со	mputer name	
	Со	mment	
	Sho	are name[1]	
	Protocol		
Wi	Wireless LAN		Wireless LAN settings
	Но	st Name	
	Со	mmunication Mode	
	SSI	D	
	Channel		

ltem		Description
	Security	
	WEP Authentication	
	WEP Encryption key number	
	WEP Encryption key number [X]	X can be set between 1 and 4.
	WEP Encryption	
	WPA Encryption	
	WPA Authentication	
	Pre-Shared Key	
	User name	
	Domain name	
	EAP Type	
	Password	
	Phase 2 user name	
	Phase 2 Method TTLS	
	Phase 2 Method PEAP	
	Server cert.	
	IntermediateCA	
	Server ID	
	Sub domain	
	MIC check	
DN	IS	DNS settings
	IPv4	
	Server[X]	X can be set between 1 and 3.
	Selected IPv4 DNS Server	
	IPv6	

ltem		ltem	Description
		Server[X]	X can be set between 1 and 3.
		Selected IPv6 DNS Server	
	Res	olver Protocol	
Do	Domain Name		
	ether		
	wlo	ın	
DD	NS		
	eth	er	
	wlo	ın	
WI	NS		WINS settings
	eth	er	
		Primary WINS	
		Secondary WINS	
	wlo	ın	
		Primary WINS	
		Secondary WINS	
Bluetooth		th	Bluetooth settings
	Bluetooth mode		Bluetooth connection mode
SSI	SSDP		SSDP settings
	υυ	ID	
	Pro	file	
	TTL		
UP	UPnP		UPnP settings
	URL		
Bonjour			Bonjour (Redezvous) settings

ltem		Description
	Computer Name (cname)	
	Local Hostname (ether)	
	Local Hostname (wlan)	
	Location	
	Priority (diprint)	
	Priority (lpr)	
	Priority (ipp)	
	IP TTL	
	LinkLocal Route for Multil/F	
	IPP Port	
SN	MP	SNMP settings
	SNMPv1v2	
	SNMPv3	
	protocol	
	v1Trap	
	v2Trap	
	v3Trap	
	SNMPv1v2 Remote Setting	
	SNMPv3 Privacy	
ssh		ssh settings
	Compression	
	Port	
	TimeOut	
	Login TimeOut	
Au	hFree	Authfree settings

ltem		Description
	IPv4	
	AuthFreeEntry[X]	X can be set between 1 and 5.
	IPv6	
	AuthFreeEntry[X]	X can be set between 1 and 5
	Parallel	
	USB	
LPR		
	lprm check host	
	lpr prnerr chk	
Cer	tificate	
	Verification	
WS	S-MFP	
	Network Device Name	
	Comments	
	Location	
	Presentation URL	
	WS-Device TCP Port	
	WS-Printer TCP Port	
	WS-Printer Job Timeout	
	MetadataVersion	
	UUID	
IEEI	E 802.1X	
	User name	
	Domain name	
	EAP Type	

ltem		Description
	Password	
	Phase 2 user name	
	Phase 2 Method TTLS	
	Phase 2 Method PEAP	
	Server cert.	
	Intermediate CA	
	Server ID	
	Sub domain	
Shell mode		Remote maintenance tool mode

# **Message List**

This is a list of messages that appear in the printer's system log. The system log can be viewed using the "syslog" command.

# System Log Information

Use the following command to display the system log information:

- UNIX: Use the "syslog" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- telnet: Use the "syslog" command.

Message	Problem and solutions
account is unavailable: Same account name be used.	User account is disabled. This could be because it use the same account name as the administrator account.
account is unavailable: The authentication password is not set up.	User account is disabled. This could be because the authentication password is not set, and only the encryption account is set.
account is unavailable: encryption is impossible.	Encryption is not possible and account is disabled. This could be because:  • Security option is not installed.  • Encryption password has not been specified.
add_sess_IPv4: bad trap <ipv4 address="">, community <community name=""></community></ipv4>	The IPv4 address (0.0.0.0.) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPv4 address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPv4: community <community name=""> already defined.</community>	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_IPv6: bad trap <ipv6 address="">, community <community name=""></community></ipv6>	The IPv6 address [::] is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPv6 address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPv6: community <community name=""> already defined.</community>	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_IPX: bad trap <ipx address="">, community <community name=""></community></ipx>	The IPX address (00:00:00:00:00) is unavailable when the community access type is

1

Message	Problem and solutions
	TRAP. Specify the host IPX address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPX: community <community name=""> already defined.</community>	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
adjust time server < NTP server name > offset: xx sec.	ncsd tells you the timing of the NTP server and whether or not the time system clock is set.
Authenticated	The supplicant is authenticated.
authenticating	The supplicant is authenticating with the access point (EAP or WPA).
Authentication mode mismatch	The authentication mode of the access point is different from the authentication mode of the supplicant.  Use the authentication mode between the access point and the supplicant.
btd is disabled.	Communication via Bluetooth is unavailable because btd is disabled in the security mode.  Enable the btd in the security mode.
centrod is disabled.	Communication via parallel connections unavailable because centrod is disabled in the security mode.  Enable centrod in the security mode.
child process exec error! (process name)	The network service failed to start. Turn the printer off and then on. If this does not work, contact your service or sales representative.
cipher suite mismatch	The uni-cast / multi-cast suite (TKIP/AES/WEP) of the access point is different from the suite used by the supplicant.
Client EAP method rejected	The authentication mode of the access point is different with the authentication mode of the supplicant.
	Use the same authentication mode between the access point and the supplicant.

Message	Problem and solutions
Client password rejected	The client's password was rejected. Check the client password.
Client TLS certificate rejected	The client's TLS certificate was rejected. Check the certificate.
Connected DHCPv6 Server ( <dhcpv6 serveraddress="">).</dhcpv6>	The IP address was successfully received from the DHCPv6 server.
Connecting	The supplicant is waiting for wireless connection to the access point.
Current Interface Speed: xxxMbps	Speed of the network (10 Mbps, 100 Mbps, or 1Gbps).
DHCPv6 server not found.	The DHCPv6 server was not found. Make sure that the DHCPv6 is on the network.
dpsd is disabled.	Communication via PictBridge is unavailable because PictBridge is disabled in the security mode.  Enable PictBridge in the security mode.
Duplicate IP = <ip address=""> (from <mac address="">).</mac></ip>	The same IP address (IPv4, or IPv6 address) was used. Each IP address (IPv4, or IPv6 address) must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in [MAC address].
Exiting	The lpd service has ended and the system is exiting the process.
IEEE 802.11 <communication mode=""> mode</communication>	Displays wireless LAN communication mode (infrastructure, or 802.11 ad hoc).
IEEE 802.11 Card does NOT support WPA .	A wireless card that does not support WPA is installed. Install a wireless card that supports WPA.
IEEE 802.11 Card Firmware REV. <version></version>	Displays the version number of the 802.11 card's firmware.
IEEE 802.11 current channel <channel number=""></channel>	Displays the current channel number of the active wireless card (in ad hoc and infrastructure mode).
IEEE 802.11 MAC Address = <mac address=""></mac>	Displays the MAC address of the wireless interface.

Message	Problem and solutions
IEEE 802.11 SSID <ssid> (AP MAC Address <mac address="">)</mac></ssid>	The MAC address and SSID of the access point are connected in infrastructure mode.
IEEE 802.11 <communication mode=""> mode</communication>	Displays IEEE 802.11 communication mode.
inetd start.	The inetd service has started.
<interface name=""> card removed</interface>	The interface managed by the supplicant has been removed.
<interface name=""> interface down</interface>	The interface managed by the supplicant is disabled, or cannot connect to the access point.
<interface name=""> interface up</interface>	The interface managed by the supplicant is enabled, or is connected to the access point.
Interface (interface name): Duplicate IP Address ( <ip address="">).</ip>	The same IP (IPv4 or IPv6) address was used. Each IP address must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in [IP address].
<pre><interface> started with IP: <ip address=""></ip></interface></pre>	IP address (IPv4 or IPv6 address) has been set for the interface and is operating.
<interface>: Subnet overlap.</interface>	The same IP address (IPv4, orIPv6 address) and the subnet mask is used with other device.
job canceled. jobid=%d.	The spooled job was canceled due to error or user request.
LEAP challenge to access point failed	The LEAP challenge to the access point has failed.
Memory allocate error.	Data cannot be obtained.
	Disconnect the USB cable, and then connect it.
MIC failure TKIP counter measures started	The supplicant using TKIP has detected two instances of tampering within 60 seconds and has started counter measures.
MIC failure TKIP counter measures stopped	Counter measures have stopped after 60 seconds (since the supplicant using TKIP started counter measures against tampering).
no RADIUS/authentication server	The supplicant has received a message reporting that a usable RADIUS server cannot be found.

Message	Problem and solutions
no smart card detected on device	PEAP/GTC (Generic Token Card) is selected, but a smart card using GTC authentication cannot be found.
no WPA information element in probe response, rescanning	There is no WPA information on the response from the SSID probe of the access point you want to use. The supplicant is rescanning.
restarted.	The lpd service has started.
server certificate invalid	The server ID is disabled. Check the server authentication.
server identity invalid	The server ID is disabled. Check the server authentication.
server not trusted	The RADIUS server cannot be trusted.
session IPv4 <community name=""> not defined.</community>	The requested community name is not defined.
session IPv6 <community name=""> not defined.</community>	The requested community name is not defined.
session_ipx <community name=""> not defined.</community>	The requested community name is not defined.
shutdown signal received. network service rebooting	The smbd service has started.
SMTPC: failed to get smtp server ip-address.	The SMTP server IP address could not be obtained. This could be because:
	The specified DNS server could not be found.
	<ul> <li>No connection to the network has been established.</li> </ul>
	The specified DNS server could not be found.
	An incorrect DNS server is specified.
	The specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server. timeout.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to timeout. This could be because the specified SMTP server name is incorrect, or no connection to the network has been established, or the network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server. Check the SMTP server

Message	Problem and solutions
	name, or the network connection and configuration.
SMTPC: refused connect by smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server is denied. This could be because server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the SMTP server name, port number, or the SMTP server port number.
SMTPC: no smtp server. connection close.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to no response from SMTP. This could be because a server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the SMTP server name, port number, or the SMTP server port number.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server failed. This could be because no connection to the network has been established, or the network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server, or the specified SMTP server name is incorrect, or the specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server, or a server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the DNS Server's IP address and SMTP server's IP address, or the SMTP server name and SMTP port number, or the SMTP server's SMTP port number, or the network connection and configuration.
SMTPC: username or password wasn't correct. [response code] (information)	Connection to the SMTP server failed, because the specified SMTP user name is incorrect, or the specified SMTP password is incorrect. Check the SMTP user name and password.
Snmp over IPv4 is ready	Communication over IPv4 with snmp is available.
Snmp over IPv6 is ready.	Communication over IPv6 with snmp is available.
Snmp over IPX is ready.	Communication over IPX with snmp is available.
snmpd start.	The snmpd service has started.

Message	Problem and solutions
started.	The direct print service has started.
Started.	The bonjour (rendezvous) function is enabled.
stopped	The supplicant is terminating.
success key received	The supplicant received the EAP-Success key.
success but invalid key	The supplicant received a message reporting that EAP authentication was successful, but the EAPOL key was invalid.
supplicant started	The supplicant has started.
supplicant unbound	The supplicant is not connected to the unbound access point.
terminated.	The direct print service has stopped.
Terminated.	The bonjour (rendezvous) function is disabled.
There is problem in dhcp server operation.	There is a problem with the DHCP server.
	If multiple DHCP servers are active on the network, check that they are assigning unique IP addresses to each printer.
too many pictures.	PictBridge printing failed because too many image are sent during one print transaction. Reduce images at one print transaction.
trap account is unavailable.	v3Trap cannot be sent. This could be because the Trap destination account is different from the account specified by the printer.
unauthenticated	The authentication failed. The supplicant was denied access to the access point, or was not authenticated.
Updated (option name) (value) via DHCPv6 Server	The parameter obtained from the DHCP server has been updated.
waiting for keys	The supplicant is waiting for the session key.
supplicant started	The supplicant has started.

Message	Problem and solutions
supplicant unbound	The supplicant is not connected to the unbound access point.
WS-Device started.	WS-Device has started.
WS-Printer started.	WS-Printer has started.

# Note

- For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.
- For details about "syslog" command, see "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

## **■** Reference

• p.227 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

# **Registering Classification Codes**

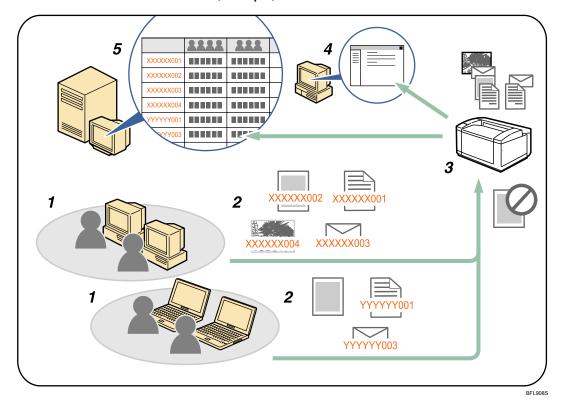
This section explains classification codes.

If you register classification codes, the printer logs the number of prints made under each code.

You can register classification codes to individual users and specified purposes, enabling you to monitor printer usage by each.

For example, you can manage accounts according to individual clients or account titles.

### Classification Code - Based Process (example)



- 1. Divisions, sections, departments, project teams, users, etc., to be managed.
- 2. The appropriate classification code for the print job is entered.

For details, see "Specifying Classification Code for Print Job".

3. The job is printed.

When printing in an environment where classification codes are required, print jobs that do not have a classification code cannot be printed.

For details, see "Configuring Classification Codes".

- 4. The print job is checked using Web Image Monitor.
- 5. Classification codes are collected and managed by an external log collection system.

## **Configuring Classification Codes**

Use Web Image Monitor to specify whether or not to apply classification code requirement to print jobs.

## 

- If "Required" is selected for the classification code requirement setting in Web Image Monitor, any print job that without a classification code specified will not be printed.
- The configuration page can be printed at any time.
- The default setting for classification code requirement is "Optional".
- 1. Start Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

- Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].
   For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
- 4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [Logs].
- 5. Check that [Required] or [Optional] is selected for [Classification Code] in the [Common Settings for All Logs] column.
- 6. Click [OK].
- 7. Click [Logout].
- 8. Quit Web Image Monitor.

# ■ Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# Specifying the Classification Code for a Print Job

When printing in an environment where classification codes are required, a classification code must be specified for each print job.



• The PostScript 3 printer driver does not support the classification codes and it cannot be used to print under environment which the classification codes are required.

### For the RPCS printer driver:

- 1. Open the printer properties dialog box after creating a document in an application.
- Click the [Print Settings] or [Setup] tab.

If you select [Send to Job Binding] in the [Job type:] box, you cannot enter a classification code.

4. Enter the classification code in the [Classification code:] box, and then click [OK].

This code identifies the user. The classification code can contain up to 32 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9, "-") characters.

- 5. Make any other necessary print settings, and then click [OK].
- 6. A confirmation message appears. Read it, and then click [OK].
- 7. Execute the print command.
- 8. The print job is sent to the printer.

## For the PCL printer driver:

- Open the printer properties dialog box after creating a document in an application.
- 2. Click the [Valid Access] tab.
- 3. Enter the classification code in the [Classification Code:] box.

This code identifies the user. The classification code can contain up to 32 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9, "-") characters.

- 4. Make any other necessary print settings, and then click [OK].
- 5. A confirmation message appears. Read it, and then click [OK].
- 6. Execute the print command.
- 7. The print job is sent to the printer.

## **U** Note

- The specified classification code is stored in the printer driver.
- To switch between different classification codes, install the printer driver under different names, and specify different classification code for each driver.

## Reference

- p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"
- p.65 "PCL Accessing the Printer Properties"
- p.70 "RPCS Accessing the Printer Properties"

# 8. Using a Printer Server

This chapter explains how to configure this printer to work as a network printer.

# **Preparing Printer Server**

This section explains how to configure the printer as a Windows network printer. The printer is configured to enabling network clients to use it. When the network printer is connected via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you can set the printing notification function to notify clients of the results of their print jobs.

## Mportant (

- Under Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, to change printer properties
  in the [Printer] folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows Vista,
  Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator or member of the
  PowerUsers group.
- Open the [Printers and Faxes] window from the [Start] menu.
   The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.
- 2. Click the icon of the printer you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties]. The printer properties appear.
- 3. On the [Sharing] tab, click [Share this printer].
- 4. To share the printer with users using a different version of Windows, click [Additional Drivers...].

If you have installed an alternative driver by selecting [Share As:] during the printer driver installation, this step can be ignored.

5. Click [OK], and then close the printer properties.

# Printing Notification via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

Follow the procedure below to configure the printer to use the printing notification function of SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

### Setting the print server



Under Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, to change printer properties
in the [Printer] folder, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows Vista,
 Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as an Administrator or member of the
PowerUsers group.

The print server setting dialog box appears.

2. Select the [Notify client PCs of printout/data-transmission] check box, and then click [OK].

After print server setting is made, a dialog box appears. Confirm the dialog box content, and click [OK].

Click [Cancel] to interrupt the procedure.

A dialog box appears for client setting.

3. Click [OK].

The print server setting is completed. Each client must be set to receive print notification.



- Current printing jobs restart from the beginning after the spooler pauses briefly.
- When the expansion function is not used, the function is automatically set as available.
- If you log on using an account that does not have Administrator privileges, the client may not be notified
- For details, see "Using the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Port"

## Reference

• p.23 "Installing the Printer Driver"

## Setting a client

 On the [Start] menu, point to [All Programs], [DeskTopBinder], [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client], and then click [Extended Features Settings].

A dialog box for setting the expansion function appears.

- 2. Select the [Notify of printout/data-transmission when using print server] check box.
- 3. Click [OK].

The client setting is completed.



 Set the printing notification function on the printer driver as well as on SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

## 8

# **Using NetWare**

This section describes the setting procedure for network printers in the NetWare environment. In the NetWare environment, you can connect the printer as a "print server" or "remote printer".



IPv6 cannot be used on this function.

### Setting procedure

- · When using the printer as a print server
  - 1. Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin
  - 2. Setting the network interface board.
  - 3. Turning the printer off and then back on.
- · When using the printer as a remote printer
  - 1. Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
  - 2. Setting the network interface board.
  - 3. Setting NetWare.
  - 4. Starting the print server.



- This procedure assumes an environment is already prepared for normal NetWare running the printing service setting.
- The procedure is explained with the following example settings:
  - File server's name ... CAREE
  - Print server's name ... PSERV
  - Printer's name ...R-PRN
  - Queue name ...R-QUEUE

### Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

To use the printer in a NetWare environment, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin to set the NetWare printing environment.

### Printers listed by SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin lists printers connected to the network. If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, print configuration page, and then check the printer name.



- The NetWare Client provided by Novell is required to set the printing environment using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin under the following environments:
  - NDS or Bindery mode in Windows 2000/XP

For details about SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see "Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin".

## Reference

p.202 "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin"

## Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server using NetWare 3.x.

- 1. Start Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

- Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].
   For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
- 4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].
  - Print Server Name: Enter the NetWare print server name. To use the interface board as a print server, enter the name of a print server that is not active on the file server. Use up to 47 characters.
  - Logon Mode: Specify whether to designate a file server or NDS tree when logging on to NetWare.
  - File Server Name: When a file server name is entered here, only the specified file server is searched for. This item is mandatory. Use up to 47 characters.
  - NDS Tree: To enable NDS mode, enter the name of the NDS tree you want to log on to. Use up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
  - NDS Context Name: To enable NDS mode, enter the print server context. Use up to 127 characters.
  - Operation Mode: Specify whether to use the interface board as a print server or a remote printer.
  - Remote Printer No.: This item is effective when the interface board is specified as a remote printer.
     Enter the same number as the number of the printer to be created on the print server (0 to 254 characters).
  - Job Timeout: When the interface board is used as a NetWare remote printer, the printer cannot
    detect when a print job ends. Therefore, the printer terminates printing when a certain period of
    time has elapsed since it last received print data (i.e., when it has not received print data for a
    certain period of time). Specify here this period of time (3 to 255 seconds). The initial value is
    15 (seconds).
  - Frame Type: Select the frame type from the drop-down menu.
  - Print Server Protocol: Select the protocol for NetWare from the drop-down menu.
  - NCP Delivery Protocol: Select the protocol for NCP delivery.

5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].

Configuration is now complete. Wait several before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6. Click [Logout].



- To check the configuration is correct, enter the following from the command prompt:
  - F:> USERLIST
- If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.
- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the
  configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Test
  Printing", Quick Installation Guide.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer.
   Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's manual.



• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5 / 5.1, 6 / 6.5)

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server using NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6/6.5.



- When using the printer as a print server in NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5 / 5.1, or NetWare 6 / 6.5, set it to the NDS mode.
- When using NetWare 5 / 5.1 or NetWare 6 / 6.5, set the printer as a print server.
- 1. Start Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

- Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
- 4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].
- Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].
   Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

- 6. Click [Logout].
- 7. Quit Web Image Monitor.



To check the configuration is correct, enter the following from the command prompt:

F:> USFRIIST

- If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.
- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the
  configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Test
  Printing", Quick Installation Guide.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer.

  Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's manual.



• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

## Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5 / 5.1 or 6 / 6.5 Environment

Follow the procedure below to connect the printer as a print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5 / 5.1 or NetWare 6 / 6.5.



- When creating a queued print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5 / 5.1 or NetWare 6 / 6.5, create a print queue on the file server using NetWare Administrator.
- This printer is not available as a remote printer for use in a pure IP environment.
- To use the printer in a pure IP environment, set it to IPv4.

### Setting up using NWadmin

- 1. From Windows, start NWadmin.
  - For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.
- 2. Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 3. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].
- 4. In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.
- 5. In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].

Q

- In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].
- 7. Check the settings, and then click [Create].
- 8. Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].
- 10. In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name.
- 11. Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].
- 12. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.
- 13. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].
- Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].
- 15. Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK].
- 16. Check the settings, and then click [OK].
- 17. Select a context specified, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 18. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Sever (Non NDPS)].
- 19. In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the print server name.
  Use the same print server name specified using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].
- 21. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.
- 22. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].
- 23. Check the settings, and then click [OK].
- 24. Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

### To quit

CAREE: unload pserver

#### To start

CAREE: load pserver print\_server\_name

### Setting up using Web Image Monitor

- 1. Start Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

Enter the user login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login name and password, consult your network administrator.

- 4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].
- 5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

- 6. Click [Logout].
- 7. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the
  configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Test
  Printing", Quick Installation Guide.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer.
   Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's manual.

## Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# 8

# Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 3.x.

### Setting up using PCONSOLE

1. Enter "PCONSOLE" from the command prompt.

F:> PCONSOLE

2. Create a print queue.

When using the existing print queue, go to the procedure for creating a printer.

- 3. From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Queue Information], and then press the [Enter] key.
- 4. Press [Insert] key, and then enter a print queue name.
- 5. Press [Esc] key to return to the [Available Options] menu.
- 6. Set up the network connection to a printer.
- On the [Available Options] menu, click [Print Server Information], and then press the [Enter] key.

8. To create a new print server, press the [Insert] key, and then enter a print server name.

For a currently defined print server, select a print server in the [Print Server] list.

Use the same printer name specified using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

- 9. From the [Print Server Information] menu, select [Print Server Configuration].
- 10. From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Printer Configuration].
- 11. Select the printer indicated as [Not Installed].

Use the same printer number specified as the remote printer number using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

12. To change the printer name, enter a new name.

A name "printer x" is assigned to the printer. The "x" stands for the number of the selected printer.

13. As type, select [Remote Parallel, LPT1].

The IRQ, Buffer size, Starting form, and Queue service mode are automatically configured.

- 14. Press the [Esc] key, and then click [Yes] on the confirmation message.
- 15. Press the [Esc] key to return to [Print Server Configuration Menu].
- 16. Assign print queues to the created printer.
- 17. From [Print Server Configuration Menu], select [Queues Serviced By Printer].
- 18. Select the printer created.
- 19. Press the [Insert] key to select a queue serviced by the printer.

You can select several queues.

20. Follow the instructions on the screen to make other necessary settings.

Following these steps, check that the queues are assigned.

- 21. Press the [Esc] key until "Exit?" appears, and then select [Yes] to exit PCONSOLE.
- 22. Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

#### To quit

CAREE: unload pserver

#### To start

CAREE: load pserver print\_server\_name

If the printer works as configured, the message "Waiting for job" appears.

### Setting up using Web Image Monitor

- 1. Start Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

- 4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].
- 5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

- 6. Click [Logout].
- 7. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the
  configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Test
  Printing", Quick Installation Guide.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer.
   Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's manual.

## Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# 8

# Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5 / 5.1, 6 / 6.5)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x, 5 / 5.1 and 6 / 6.5.

# **☆ Important**

- To use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x, 5 / 5.1, 6 / 6.5, set it to NDS mode.
- Do not use the printer as a remote printer when Pure IP is used.

### Setting up using NWadmin

1. From Windows, start NWadmin.

For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.

- 2. Set up the network connection to a print queue. Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 3. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].
- 4. In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.
- 5. In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].

- In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].
- 7. Check the settings, and then click [Create].
- Set up the network connection to a printer. Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 9. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].
- 10. In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name
- 11. Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].
- Assign print queues to the created printer. Click [Assignments, and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.
- 13. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].
- 14. Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].
- 15. Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].
- 16. Set up the network connection to a print server. Select a context specified, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.
- 17. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Sever (Non NDPS)].
- 18. In the [Print Server Name:] box, enter the print server name.
  Use the same print server name specified using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].
- 20. Assign the printer to the created print server. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.
- 21. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].
- 22. In the [Printers] area, click the printer you assigned, and then click [Printer Number].
- 23. Enter the printer number, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].

  Use the same printer number specified as the remote printer number using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
- 24. Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

  If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

#### To exit

CAREE: unload pserver

#### To start

CAREE: load pserver print\_server\_name

- 25. Enter the printer server name as the context name, and then press the [Enter] key.
- 26. Select the printer name on the context menu, and then press the [Enter] key.

### Setting up using Web Image Monitor

- 1. Start Web Image Monitor.
- 2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

- Enter the user login name and password, and then click [Login].
   For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
- 4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].
- Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].
   Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.
- 6. Click [Logout].
- 7. Quit Web Image Monitor.



- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the
  configuration page printed from the printer. For details about printing a configuration page, see "Test
  Printing", Quick Installation Guide.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer.
   Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's manual.

# Reference

• p.195 "Using Web Image Monitor"

# 9. Mac OS Configuration

This chapter explains how to use this printer with a Mac.

# Mac OS

This section explains how to configure a Mac OS to use EtherTalk and USB.

The following explains how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are not using Mac OS 9.1, see the manual of the Mac OS you are using for details.



For Mac OS 8.6 and higher. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)



• The PostScript 3 printer driver is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

Mac OS 8 and 9:PS Driver:(language):Disk1

## Installing the PostScript 3 Printer Driver and PPD File

It is necessary to install a printer driver and PostScript Printer Description (PPD) files to print from a Mac OS.

Follow the procedure below to install a printer driver and a PPD file into a Mac OS using Mac OS 8.6 and higher.

### **PostScript 3 Printer Driver**

- 1. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2. Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.
- 3. Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.
- 4. Double-click the [PS Driver] folder.
- 5. Double-click the folder of the language you use.
- 6. Open [Disk1], and then double-click the installer icon.
- 7. Follow the instructions on the screen.

### **PPD Files**

- 1. Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.
- 2. Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.
- 3. Double-click the [Printer Descriptions] folder.
- 4. Double-click the folder of the language you are using.

- 5. Open the [DISK1] folder.
- Drag the PPD file and the plugin file into [Printer Descriptions] in [Extensions] under [System Folder].
- 7. Restart the Mac OS.

## **Setting Up PPD Files**



- Make sure that the printers are connected to an AppleTalk network before performing the following procedure.
- 1. On the [Apple] menu, click [Chooser].
- 2. Click the Adobe PS icon.
- 3. In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, click the name of the printer you want to use.
- 4. Click [Create].
- 5. Click the printer you want to use, and then click [Setup].

A PPD file is set up and the Adobe PS icon appears at the left of the printer name in the list. Follow the procedure on Setting Up Options to make option settings; otherwise close the [Chooser] dialog box.

## **Setting Up Options**

- 1. On the [Apple] menu, click [Chooser].
- 2. Click the Adobe PS icon.
- In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, click the name of the printer you want to use, and then click [Setup].
- 4. Click [Configure].

A list of options appears.

- 5. Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it.
- 6. Click [OK].

The list of options closes.

7. Click [OK].

The [Chooser] dialog box appears.

8. Close the [Chooser] dialog box.



• If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.

## **Installing Adobe Type Manager**



- Quit all applications currently running before installation. Install ATM after you restart the computer.
- 1. Start a Mac OS.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 3. Double-click the CD-ROM drive con.
- 4. Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.
- 5. Double-click the [ATM] folder.
- 6. Double-click the ATM 4.6.2 installer icon.
- 7. Follow the instructions on the screen.
- 8. When the procedure is complete, restart the computer. ATM will be completely installed only after restarting.
- On the [Apple] menu, open [Control Panel], and then click [~ATM].
   The ATM control panel opens.



For details about installation, see the operating instructions in the ATM folder.

# **Installing Screen Fonts**

Follow the procedure below to install screen fonts.

The screen fonts described below can be found in the [Fonts] folder on the CD-ROM.

- 1. Start a Mac OS.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The CD-ROM drive icon appears.

3. Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.

The contents of the CD-ROM appear.

- 4. Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] folder.
- 5. Double-click the [Fonts] folder.

- 6. Double-click the [Screen font] folder.
- 7. Double-click the [TrueType] or [Type1] folder.

Select the font type you want to use.

8. Copy the fonts you want to install in [System Folder].

A confirmation message appears.

9. Click [OK].

The fonts are installed.

10. Restart the Mac OS.

## Changing to EtherTalk

Follow the procedure below to configure to a Mac OS to use EtherTalk.

- 1. Open [Control Panel], and then double-click the AppleTalk icon.
- 2. On the [Connect via:] pop-up menu, click [Ethernet].
- 3. If you change zones, select a name on the [Current zone:] pop-up menu.
- 4. Close the AppleTalk control panel.
- 5. Restart the computer.



- The procedures used to configure Mac OS may vary depending on the Mac OS version. The following
  describes how to configure Mac OS 9.1. If you are using a different version of Mac OS, use the
  following procedures as a reference and see the manuals for your Mac OS version.
- Confirm the Connection to the Printer with TCP/IP.
- For information about installing applications required for EtherTalk, see the Mac OS manuals.

## 9

# Mac OS X

This section explains how to configure a Mac OS X to use EtherTalk, USB and TCP/IP.

Follow the procedure below to configure Mac OS X 10.3.8. If you are not using Mac OS X 10.3.8, see the manual of the Mac OS X you are using for details.



• For Mac OS X 10.1 or higher.



• The PPD files are stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

Mac OS X:PPD Installer

## Installing the PPD Files

Follow the procedure below to install a PPD file to print from Mac OS X.



- You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your network administrator.
- 1. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.
- 2. Double-click the CD-ROM drive icon.
- 3. Double-click the [Mac OS X] folder.
- 4. Double-click the [MacOSX PPD Installer] folder.
- 5. Double-click the installer icon.
- 6. Follow the instructions on the screen.

## **Setting Up the PPD Files**

- 1. Start Printer Setup Utility.
- 2. Click [Add].

### Mac OS X 10.4 or later

Click a printer that has "AppleTalk" indicated in the "Connection" column.

If the zone is set, click [More Printers...], and then select the zone from the second pop-up menu.

### Other Mac OS X

Click [AppleTalk] on the first pop-up menu.

If the zone is set, select the zone from the second pop-up menu.

3. Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.4 or later, you are using from the [Print Using] popup menu.

A list of printer types appears.

- 4. Select the PPD file for the model you are using, and then click [Add].
- 5. Quit Printer Setup Utility.

## **Setting Up Options**

- 1. Start System Preferences.
- 2. Click [Print & Fax].
- In the [Printer] list, click the name of the printer you want to use, and then click [Printer Setup...].
- 4. Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it.
- 5. Click [Apply Changes].



• If the option you want to select is not displayed, PPD files may not be set up correctly. To complete the setup, check the name of the PPD file displayed in the dialog box.

# Using USB Interface

Follow the procedure below to set up USB connection.

- 1. Start Printer Setup Utility.
- 2. Click [Add].

### Mac OS X 10.4 or later

Click a printer that has "USB" indicated in the "Connection" column.

### Other Mac OS X

Click [USB] on the pop-up menu.

The connected printer appears.

3. Select the printer, and then select its manufacturer from the [Printer Model:] pop-up menu.

Under Mac OS X 10.4 or later, you are using from the [Print Using] pop-up menu.

A list of printer types appears.

- 4. Select the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].
- 5. Quit Printer Setup Utility.





- When printing with a USB connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to [Auto Detect] or [PS] before printing.
- USB2.0 can be used only with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.

## **Using Bonjour**

Follow the procedure below to print using Bonjour under Mac OS X 10.2.3 or higher. Ethernet and wireless LAN connections can also be used.

- 1. Start Printer Setup Utility.
- 2. Click [Add].

#### Mac OS X 10.4 or later

Click a printer that has "Bonjour" indicated in the "Connection" column.

If the zone is set, click [More Printers...], and then select the zone from the second pop-up menu.

### Other Mac OS X

Click [Rendezvous] on the pop-up menu.

If the zone is set, select the zone from the second pop-up menu.

- 3. Select the name of the connected printer from the list of printer models, and then click [Add].

  Under Mac OS X 10.4 or later, Installable Options window appears. Select the option you want to set up, and then select an appropriate setting for it, and then [Continue].
- 4. Quit Printer Setup Utility.



 When printing with a Rendezvous connection to a Macintosh computer, printer language does not change automatically. Use the control panel on this printer to change printer language to [Auto Detect] or [PS] before printing.

# Changing to EtherTalk

Follow the procedure below to configure a Mac OS X to use EtherTalk.



- You need an administrator name and a password (phrase). For details, consult your network administrator.
- 1. Open [System Preferences], and then click the Network icon.
- 2. Click [Built-in Ethernet] in the [Show:] list box.

- 3. Click the [AppleTalk] tab.
- 4. Select the [Make AppleTalk Active] check box.
- 5. To change AppleTalk zones, select a name from the [AppleTalk Zone:] pop-up menu.
- 6. When the settings are made, click [Apple Now].

## ■ Reference

• For information about installing applications required for EtherTalk, see the Mac OS manuals.

## 9

# **Configuring the Printer**

Use the control panel to enable AppleTalk. (The default is active.)

# **Using PostScript 3**

## **Job Type**

Use this to select the type of print job.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Job Type:] on [Job Log] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Job Type:] on [Job Log] in the print dialog box.

You can select the following items:

### **Normal Print**

Select this for normal printing. The print job starts immediately after the print command is given.

## **Sample Print**

Use this function to print only one set of a multiple print jobs.

The other sets are saved in the printer. The saved job can be printed from the printer's control panel. You can also delete the saved job.



- The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters.
- Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

### **Locked Print**

Use this function to save documents in the printer memory with a password, and then edit and print them as you want.



- The "User ID:" can contain to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. The "Password" must be 4-8 digits.
- Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

### **Hold Print**

Use this function to temporarily hold a file in the printer, and print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.



- The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters.
- The "File Name:" can contain to 16 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.
- Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

# 9

### **Stored Print**

Use this function to store a file in the printer, and then print it from the computer or the printer's control panel later.



- The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters. The "Password" must be 4-8 digits.
- The "File Name:" can contain to 16 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.
- You can assign a password to a saved document, but password assignment is not mandatory.
- Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

### Store and Print

Use this function to prints the file at once and also stores the file in the printer.



- The "User ID:" can contain up to eight alphanumeric (a- z, A- Z, 0- 9) characters. The "Password" must be 4-8 digits.
- The "File Name:" can contain to 16 alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.
- You can assign a password to a saved document, but password assignment is not mandatory.
- Entering the "User ID:" helps you distinguish your print job from others.

## **Using Sample Print**



- You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At
  most, the printer can save 100 jobs or 9,000 pages for Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and
  Stored Print.
- Sample Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been executed or deleted
  using Web Image Monitor before you select [Sample Print] from the control panel.
- Sample Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you select [Sample Print] using
  the control panel will appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try
  to print or delete those Sample Print files.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, sample print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.
- Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.

- When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
- When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 9,000 pages.
- 1. In the application, on the [File] menu, click [Print].

The [Print] dialog box appears.

2. Set the number of copies to two or more.

The sample print job is sent to the printer, and one set is printed.

- 3. In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].
- 4. On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, select [Sample Print].
- In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

6. Check the printed output to make sure the settings are correct.

If the settings are correct, perform the following steps to print the remaining sets.

If you want to delete a saved job, see "Sample Print".

- 7. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].
- 8. Select [Sample Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of sample print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

9. Select the file you want to print by pressing it.

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

- 10. Press [Print] to change the number of sets to be printed.
- 11. Enter the new number of sets using the number keys.

If you do not want to change the set quantity, perform the following steps.

You can enter up to 999 sets.

Press [Escape] to correct any entry mistakes.

12. Press [Print].

The remaining sets are printed.



- Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.
- When printing finishes, the stored file is deleted.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press [JobReset]. The file will be deleted.
- If there is a print job outstanding, this is printed before the sample print job.

## ■ Reference

• p.93 "Sample Print"

## Deleting a Sample Print File

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

2. Select [Sample Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of sample print files stored in the printer appears.

3. Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.

To cancel a selection, press the highlighted jobs again.

Only one file can be selected at a time.

4. Press [Delete].

A confirmation screen appears.

5. Press [Delete] to delete the file.

After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.



• Press [Cancel] to cancel the delete request.

### **Using Locked Print**



- You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At
  most, the printer can save 100 jobs or 9,000 pages for Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print.
- Locked Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select [Locked Print] using the control panel.
- Locked Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected [Locked Print]
  using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear
  if you try to print or delete those Locked Print files.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By
  default, locked print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected
  in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.
- Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.

1. In the application, click [Print] on the [File] menu.

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- 2. In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].
- 3. On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, click [Locked Print].
- 4. In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters, and then enter a 4-8 digit password in the [Password:] box.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

5. After making the necessary settings, click [Print].

The document file is saved in the printer.

To print the document, perform the following steps.

To delete the document, see "Locked Print".

- 6. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].
- 7. Select [Locked Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of locked print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

8. Select the file you want to print by pressing it.

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

9. Press [Print].

The password screen appears.

10. Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the [OK] key.

A confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press [Clear] to enter the password again.

11. Press [Print].

The locked file is printed.



- Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.
- When printing finishes, the stored file is deleted.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press [JobReset]. The file will be deleted.

# Reference

• p.96 "Locked Print"

Q

# **Deleting a Locked Print File**

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

2. Select [Locked Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of locked print files stored in the printer appears.

3. Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.

To cancel a selection, press the highlighted jobs again.

Only one file can be selected at a time.

4. Press [Delete].

A password screen appears.

5. Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the [OK] key.

A confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press [Clear] to enter the password again.

When multiple files are selected, the printer deletes only files that correspond to the entered password. The number of files to be deleted is displayed on the confirmation screen.

6. Press [Delete].

After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.



• Press [Cancel] to cancel the delete request.

# **Using Hold Print**



- You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- The number of pages the printer can save varies depending on the contents of the print images. At
  most, the printer can save 100 jobs or 9,000 pages for Sample Print, Locked Print and Hold Print.
- Hold Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select [Hold Print] using the control panel.
- Hold Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected [Hold Print] using
  the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you
  try to print or delete those Hold Print files.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By default, Hold print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.

- Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
  - When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 9,000 pages.
- 1. In the application, click [Print] on the [File] menu.

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- 2. In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].
- 3. On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, click [Hold Print].
- In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters. File Name can also be set.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

5. After making the necessary settings, click [Print].

The document file is saved in the printer.

To print the document, perform the following steps.

To delete the document, see "Hold Print".

6. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

7. Select [Hold Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of hold print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

- 8. Select the file you want to print by pressing it.
- 9. Press [Print].

The hold print file is printed.



- Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.
- To stop printing after printing has started, press [JobReset]. The file will be deleted.
- When printing is completed, the stored file is deleted.

# Reference

• p.100 "Hold Print"

#### Deleting a Hold Print File

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

Q

2. Select [Hold Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of hold print files stored in the printer appears.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

3. Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.

To cancel a selection, press the highlighted job again.

Only one file can be selected at a time.

4. Press [Delete].

A confirmation screen appears.

5. Press [Delete].

After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.



• Press [Cancel] to cancel the delete request.

# **Using Stored Print**



- You need Mac OS X v10.2 or higher to use this function.
- Stored Print files will not appear on the display panel if they have already been printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor before you select [Stored Print] using the control panel.
- Stored Print files printed or deleted using Web Image Monitor after you have selected [Stored Print] using the control panel will still appear on the display panel. However, an error message will appear if you try to print or delete those Stored Print files.
- If the application has a collate option, make sure that it is not selected before sending a print job. By
  default, Stored print jobs are automatically collated by the printer driver. If the collate option is selected
  in the application print dialog box, more prints than intended may be printed.
- Print jobs are not saved on the hard disk in the following cases. You can check the error log for jobs not saved.
  - When there are 100 Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print and Stored Print jobs saved on the hard disk.
  - When the total number of pages saved on the hard disk exceeds 9,000 pages.
- 1. In the application, click [Print] on the [File] menu.

The [Print] dialog box appears.

- 2. In the pop-up menu, click [Job Log].
- 3. On the [Job Type:] pop-up menu, click [Stored Print] or [Stored and Print].
  - [Stored Print]

Stores the file in the printer and print it later using the control panel.

• [Stored and Print]

Prints the file at once and also stores the file in the printer.

4. In the [User ID:] box, enter a user ID using up to eight alphanumeric (a-z, A-Z, 0-9) characters, and then enter a 4-8 digit password in the [Password:] box. File Name can also be set.

The user ID associates the user with his/her jobs.

You can assign a password to a saved document, but password assignment is not mandatory.

The password must be entered when printing or deleting.

5. After making the necessary settings, click [Print].

The document file is saved in the printer.

To print the document, perform the following steps.

To delete the document, see "Stored Print".

6. On the printer's control panel, press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

7. Select [Stored Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

User ID, Date/Time and File Name also appear.

Depending on the security settings, certain print jobs may not be displayed.

- 8. Select the file you want to print by pressing it.
- 9. Press [Print].

A confirmation screen appears.

If you have already set a password, proceed to the following step.

10. Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the [OK] key.

A confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press [Clear] to enter the password again.

If you have not set the password, proceed to the following step.

# 11. Press [Print].

The Stored Print file is printed.



- Press [Cancel] to cancel printing.
- Stored Print files sent to the printer is not deleted unless you delete them in the printer, or enable automatic deletion of Stored Print files.

Q

# ■ Reference

• p.103 "Stored Print"

# **Deleting a Stored Print File**

1. Press [Prt.Jobs].

A list of print files stored in the printer appears.

2. Select [Stored Print Jobs], and then press [Job List].

A list of Stored Print files stored in the printer appears.

- 3. Select the file you want to delete by pressing it.
- 4. Press [Delete].

A confirmation screen appears.

5. Enter the password using the scroll keys, and then press the [OK] key.

A confirmation screen appears.

A confirmation screen will appear if the password is not entered correctly. Press [Clear] to enter the password again.

6. Press [Delete].

After the file is deleted, the printer screen reappears.



- Press [Cancel] to cancel the delete request.
- If you have already set a password in the printer driver, enter it to delete.

# User Code

Use this to set a user code for print logging.

Enter a user code using up to eight digits. A user code identifies a group of users and allows you to check the number of sheets printed under each code with SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	Select the [Enable User Code] check box, and then enter a user code in the [User Code:] box on [Job Log] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	Select the [Enable User Code] check box, and then enter a user code in the [User Code:] box on [Job Log] in the print dialog box.

# **Paper Size**

Use this to select the size of paper you want to use.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Paper:] on the [Page Attributes] tab in the Page Setup dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Paper Size:] in the Page Setup dialog box.



• For details about the paper sizes supported by this printer, see Hardware Guide.

# Fit to Paper

When the size of the document and paper size differ, set whether or not to print according to paper size.

Mac OS	[Fit to Paper] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Fit to Paper] on the [Features x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

# **Prompt User**

Print is performed with the size of document to be printed unchanged.

#### **Nearest Size and Scale**

If the paper size is smaller than the selected paper size, the driver reduces the print size.

If the paper size is larger than the size of document to be printed, print is not to fit the paper size.

### **Nearest Size and Crop**

When the paper size is smaller than the size of document to be printed, print is adjusted to meet the paper size.

# **Input Slot**

Use this to select the paper sources.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Paper Source:] on [General] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Paper Feed] in the print dialog box.



• For details about the paper sources, see Hardware Guide.

# Resolution

Use this to set the resolution types.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Resolution] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Resolution] on the [Features x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.



• For more information about the resolution types, see Hardware Guide.

# **Orientation Override**

Use this to set the paper orientation.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Orientation Override] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Orientation Override] on the [Feature Sets: X] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

You can select the following items:

- Off
- Landscape
- Portrait

# **Duplex Printing**

Use this function to select duplex printing.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS
--------

Mac OS X	• 10.3 or higher
	The [Two Sided Printing] check box on [Layout] in the print dialog box.
	Other Mac OS X
	The [Print on both Sides] check box on [Duplex] in the print dialog box.

#### None

Disables duplex printing.

## Flip on Long Edge

Prints so you can open it to the long edge when bound along the long edge.

## Flip on Short Edge

Prints so you can open it to the short edge when bound along the short edge.

# Color Mode

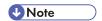
Use this function to select whether the document is printed in color or black and white.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Color Mode] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Color Mode] on the [Features x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

### Color

Prints color documents in full color.



- Color images are printed using CMYK toner: Cyan, Magenta, Yellow, and Black. CMYK represents the three primary subtractive colors.
- If you want to adjust the print color, use the settings in the Advanced dialog box accessed from the Advanced button on the [Print Quality] tab.

# Black and White

Prints everything, including color documents, in black and white. Black and White printing is faster than Color. To stop black and white areas being printed with CMYK toner, select [Black and White] in the printer driver as well as in the application.

# 9

#### Gradation

Use this function to select a type of gradation suited to your requirements.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Gradation] on the [Features x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

#### Fast

Prints quickly but loses smoothness.

#### **Standard**

Prints with good gradation.

# Color Profile

Use this function to select the color profile pattern.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Color Profile] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Color Profile] on the [Features x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

#### Auto

Use this setting to automatically configure the best color profile pattern based on the appearance of the document to be printed.

#### **Photographic**

Use this setting to enhance reproduction of photos and graphics that include midtones.

#### Presentation

Use this setting to enhance reproduction of documents containing text and graphics. This CRD is best for printing colored charts, graphs, presentation materials and so on. If you use this CRD for printing photographs, color and gradation might not reproduce so well.

#### Solid Color

Use this setting to print specific single colors, logos and so on.

#### **User Setting**

Use this setting to print images using a CRD downloaded from your application.

#### **CLP Simulation**

Prints the output colors similar to the colors displayed on the computer screen.



• Use this function to select a color rendering dictionary (CRD). The CRD is referred to color matching, so you should select the appropriate CRD for the document you are printing. The selected CRD is also referred to when [Fine] or [Super Fine] is selected for "Color Setting". The following items are available: [Auto], [Photographic], [Presentation], and [Solid Color].

# **Color Setting**

Use this function to select the correction method used for color conversion.



• The color rendering dictionary selected in the Color Profile setting is used.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Color Profile] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Color Profile] on the [Features x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

#### Off

No modification to the color setting.

#### **Fine**

Select this setting to perform color matching based on the printer's built-in color rendering dictionaries, and to perform CMYK conversion. This setting performs printing at an output target of Monitor g = 1.8.

#### **Super Fine**

Select this setting to use a color rendering dictionary similar to the Fine setting but is capable of producing output that is more vivid. Use this setting to emphasize lighter colors. This setting performs printing at an output target of Monitor g = 2.2.



Use this function to select a color rendering dictionary (CRD). The CRD is referred to color matching, so you should select the appropriate CRD for the document you are printing. The selected CRD is also referred to when [Fine] or [Super Fine] is selected for "Color Setting". The following items are available: [Auto], [Photographic], [Presentation], and [Solid Color].

# 9

# **Toner Saving/Level Color**

Use this function to reduce the amount of toner used when printing.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Toner Saving] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Toner Saving] on the [Features: Set x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.



• For details about this function, see printer driver Help.

# Collate

Use this function to enable collation. With this feature, the printer can efficiently print collated sets of multiple-page documents.



- Make sure that the following check boxes have not been selected.
  - Mac OS
     The [Collate] check box in the print dialog box.
  - Mac OS X

The [Collate] check box on [Copies & Pages] in the printer dialog box.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Collate] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Collate] on the [Features: Set x] tab on [Printer Feature] in the printer dialog box.

# **Paper Type**

Use this to select the paper type.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

[Paper Type] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
---

Mac OS X	[Paper Type] on the [Feature Set: x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.
	print diding box.



• For details about the media type supported by this printer, see Hardware Guide.

# **Black Over Print**

Select whether or not to apply a black color over any other colors when printing.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Black Over Print] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Black Over Print] on the [Features: Set x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

# **Image Smoothing**

Use this to select the image smoothing type.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Image Smoothing] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Image Smoothing] on the [Feature Set: x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

# Off

Disables image smoothing.

#### On

Performs image smoothing unconditionally.

### Auto

Performs image smoothing automatically for images that have a resolution less than 25% of supported printer resolution.

# Less than 90 ppi - Less than 300 ppi

Performs image smoothing only when the image has an image resolution (pixels per inch) less than the respective value you have selected in the list.



- When [Auto] is selected, data processing may take a long time.
- When [Image Smoothing] is used for a mask image, this function may have an undesired effect on the print result.

# Separate into CMYK

Use this to select the print separation type.

You can separate the printing data into CMYK to specify a specific color combination.

Mac OS	[Separate into CMYK] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Separate into CMYK] on the [Features: Set x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

# **CMYK Simulation Profile**

You can simulate the color tone of the printing ink.

You can select the printing ink standard from US OffsetPrint, Euroscale, JapanColor, and PaletteColor.

Mac OS	[CMYK Simulation Profile] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[CMYK Simulation Profile] on the [Features: Set x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

# **Dithering**

Use this function to set the Image Rendering mode.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Dithering] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Dithering] on the [Feature Set: x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

You can select the following items:

#### Auto

Use this setting to configure the best dithering method automatically depending on the appearance of the document to be printed.

## **Photographic**

Performs dithering using an appropriate pattern for photographs.

#### **Text**

Performs dithering using an appropriate pattern for text.

# **User Setting**

Use this setting to print images set in half tone in your application.

# **Gray Reproduction**

Use this function to select Black Color mode for text and line art.

The following table shows the tabs or menus where you can select this function.

Mac OS	[Gray Reproduction (Text/Line Art)] on [Printer Specific Options] in the print dialog box.
Mac OS X	[Gray Reproduction (Text/Line Art)] on the [Features: Set x] tab on [Printer Features] in the print dialog box.

# Black by K

Select this setting to use a black toner.

# Black/Gray by K

Black portions are printed in gray.

#### CMY+K

Select this setting to use all toners.

# Black/Gray by K (Text only)

Prints black text in gray.

# Black by K (Text only)

Prints text using black toner.

# **Color Matching**

Use this function to select whether or not you want the colors in the documents to be adjusted before printing, so that the printed page matches the colors on the screen closer.

# **Image Color Control**

Open the [Image Color Matching] dialog box, and then click this button to specify exactly how you want the colors on your screen adjusted before printing.

# **Printer Utility for Mac**

By using Printer Utility for Mac, you can download fonts, change the name of the printer and so on.



• If a Macintosh and printer are connected by USB, you cannot use Printer Utility for Mac.



- Printer Utility for Mac is included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".
- Printer Utility for Mac requires Mac OS 7.6.1-9.x, or Mac OS X 10.1.x or 10.2.1. Mac OS X 10.0.x and 10.2 are not supported.

# **Installing Printer Utility for Mac**

Follow these steps to install Printer Utility for Mac on the printer.

- 1. Start the Macintosh.
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The CD-ROM icon appears.

3. Double-click the CD-ROM icon.

The contents of the CD-ROM appear.

4. Double-click the [Mac OS 8 and 9] icon to open it.

Under Mac OS X, double-click the [Mac OS X] folder.

- Double-click the [PS Utility] folder on the CD-ROM, and then drag the [Printer Utility for Mac] file, and then drop it into the Macintosh hard disk.
- 6. Drag the CD-ROM icon and drop it into [Trash] to eject the CD-ROM.

Printer Utility for Mac is installed.



- Printer Utility for Mac is included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".
- Printer Utility for Mac requires Mac OS 8.1 or higher. (Mac OS X Classic environment is supported.)
- Printer Utility for Mac cannot use Mac OS X (native mode).

# Starting Printer Utility for Mac

#### Mac OS



- Before starting Printer Utility for Mac, make sure the printer is selected in [Chooser] on the Apple menu.
- 1. Double-click the Printer Utility for Mac icon.

The [Printer Utility for Mac] dialog box appears.

2. Click [OK].

Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.

#### Mac OS X

1. Double-click the Printer Utility for Mac icon.

The [Printer Utility for Mac] dialog box appears.

- 2. Click [OK].
- 3. In the [Available Printers:] box, select the printer you want to use.

If you change zones, select a name from [Available Network Zones:].

Click [Choose Printer...] on the Printer Utility for Mac menu if you want to change the printer.

4. Select the printer you want to use.

Printer Utility for Mac will take a few seconds to start.

Click [Choose].

# **Printer Utility for Mac Functions**

# **Downloading PS fonts**

You can download the PS fonts to the printer memory or hard disk drive.

- The following procedure to download the fonts assume that you are a system administrator. If you are not, be sure to consult your system administrator.
- During the download, do not turn off the power switch, operate the panel or open or close the cover.
- If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to the defaults.

- 1. Select [Download PS Fonts...] on the [File] menu.
- 2. Click [Add to list].

The dialog box to select fonts appears.

3. Select the desired font files, and then click [Open].

The list of selectable font names appears.

4. After adding all the fonts you want to download, click [OK].

The dialog box of selected fonts to download appears.

5. Click [Download].

The fonts begin to download, and the download status is shown.

- 6. When the completion message appears, click [OK].
- 7. Click [Cancel].



- Some fonts cannot be downloaded.
- Before downloading, read the documentation about the fonts you want to use.

# Displaying printer fonts

You can display the available fonts currently downloaded to the printer. Fonts in the printer memory and hard disk drive can be displayed.

1. Select [Display Printer's Fonts...] on the [File] menu.

A dialog box appears.

- 2. Select [Printer's memory] or [Printer's disk].
- 3. Click [OK].



• The fonts displayed in italics are the default fonts.

# **Deleting fonts**

You can delete fonts from the printer's memory or hard disk drive.



- You cannot delete the fonts displayed in italic.
- 1. Select [Display Printer's fonts] on the [File] menu.

A dialog box appears.

Q

- 2. Select [Printer's memory] or [Printer's disk].
- Select the fonts you want to delete.
- 4. Click [Delete].

A confirmation message appears.

- Confirm the fonts you want to delete and the printer name from which you want to delete the fonts.
- 6. Click [Continue], and then click [OK].
- 7. Click [OK].

# Initializing the printer disk

When initializing the printer hard disk, all the fonts downloaded to the printer hard disk drive are deleted. Before initializing, be sure to check the fonts on the hard disk drive.

# Mportant !

- When initializing the printer hard disk drive from the control panel, all of the data on the printer hard disk drive is deleted. Before initializing, be sure to check the data on the hard disk drive.
- Do not turn off the power switch until initializing is completed, otherwise the hard disk drive might be damaged.
- Select [Initialize Printer's Disk...] on the [File] menu.
   The confirmation message appears. To cancel initialization, click [Cancel].
- 2. Click [Execute].

Initializing starts.

3. When the completion message appears, click [OK].

#### Page setup

You can set the paper size on which to print "Print Fonts Catalogue" and "Prints Fonts Sample".

- 1. Select [Page Setup...] on the [File] menu.
- 2. Select the paper size.
- 3. Click [OK].

# Printing font catalog

You can print the names of fonts available on the printer.

Select [Print Fonts Catalog...] on the [File] menu.

2. Click [Print].



• The paper selected under [Page Setup] is used.

# **Printing Font Sample**

You can print samples of fonts downloaded to the hard disk drive or memory.

- 1. Select [Print Fonts Sample...] on the [File] menu.
- 2. Click [Print].



• Print by using the paper selected on [Page Setup].

# Renaming the printer

You can change the printer name displayed under AppleTalk. If you connect several printers on the network, assign different names so you can identify them. If several printers have the same name, a digit appears next to the printer name in [Chooser].



- You can enter up to 31 digits and letters.
- Do not use symbols, for example "\*", ":", "=", "@", "~".

#### Mac OS

1. On the [File] menu, click [Rename Printer...].

- 2. In the [New Name:] filed enter a new name.
- 3. Click [Rename].

The printer name is changed.

- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. On the Apple menu, click [Chooser].
- 6. Click the [AdobePS] icon.
- 7. Select the printer whose name you changed, and then close the [Chooser] dialog box.
  If there are several AppleTalk zones, select the zone the printer belongs to.

#### Mac OS X

- 1. On the [File] menu, click [Rename Printer...].
- 2. In the [New Name:] filed enter a new name.

9

3. Click [Rename].

The printer name is changed.

- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. On the [Printer Utility for Mac] menu, click [Choose Printer...].
- 6. In the [Available Network Zones:] list, select the zone for the Macintosh in use.
- In the [Available Printers:] list, select the printer whose name you changed, and then click [Choose].

# Restarting the printer

You can restart the printer.

- 1. Select [Restart Printer] on the [File] menu.
- 2. Confirm the message that appears on the screen, and then click [Restart].

The printer restarts.

The fonts downloaded in the printer memory will be deleted.

If the printer restarts, all the printer settings return to the defaults.

# Downloading PostScript files

You can download a PostScript file to the printer.

- 1. Select [Download PostScript File...] on the [Utility] menu.
- 2. Select the file name to download, click the file name, and then click [Open].
- 3. Type the log file name, and then click [Save].

The selected file is downloaded.

Errors are recorded in the log file.

# Selecting the Zone

You can change the zone to which the printer belongs under AppleTalk.



Confirm that a Macintosh and printer are connected with AppleTalk.

#### Mac OS

1. On the [Utility] menu, click [Select Zone...].

The zone to which the printer belongs and the available zone list appear.

2. Select the zone in which you want to locate the printer, and then click [Change].

A confirmation message appears.

3. Click [Continue].

A confirmation message appears.

- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. On the Apple menu, click [Chooser].
- 6. Click the [AdobePS] icon.
- 7. In the [AppleTalk zone:] list, select the zone you changed.
- 8. In the [Select a PostScript Printer:] list, select the printer you want to use.
- 9. Close the [Chooser] dialog box.

#### Mac OS X

1. On the [Utility] menu, click [Select Zone...].

The zone to which the printer belongs and the available zone list appear.

2. Select the zone which you want to locate the printer in, and then click [Change].

A confirmation message appears.

3. Click [Continue].

A confirmation message appears.

- 4. Click [OK].
- 5. On the [Printer Utility for Mac] menu, click [Choose Printer...].
- 6. In the [Available Network Zones:] list, select the zone you changed.
- 7. In the [Available Printers:] list, select the model of printer in use, and then click [Choose].

#### Displaying the printer status

You can display and confirm the current status of the printer.

1. Select [Display Printer Status...] on the [Utility] menu.

The current status of the printer appears.

2. Confirm the current status of the printer.

You can confirm the memory capacity, the VM (Virtual Memory) space, the hard disk drive status and available space on the hard disk drive. You can also confirm the zone to which the printer belongs.

3. Click [OK].

Q

# Launching the Dialogue Console

You can create and edit a PostScript file for printing, and then download it to the printer.

# **Important**

- "Launch Dialogue Console" is recommended for users with an understanding of PostScript.
- Do not download any file other than PostScript files to the printer.
- "Launch Dialogue Console" must be used at your own responsibility.
- 1. Select [Launch Dialogue Console...] on the [Utility] menu.

Open the editing screen. The Dialogue Console menu bar appears.

2. Type the PostScript command in the editor screen.

To edit a PostScript file, select [Open] on the [File] menu to open it.

You can search or replace a character string by using the [Search] menu.

3. After editing the PostScript file, select [Download Top Window] on [Console] menu to start printing.

The PostScript file is sent to the printer.

The [Reply from Printer] box opens, depending on the PostScript file you sent.

4. Select [Return To Main Menu] on the [Console] menu to close the PostScript file.

# 10. Security Measures Provided by this Printer

This chapter describes the security measures provided by this printer and how to use these to use them to control printer usage and improve data security.

# **Using Authentication and Managing Users**

This section explains how to improve this printer's security.

The setting can be done only by the administrator.

## **Enabling Authentication**

To control administrators' and users' access to the printer, perform administrator authentication and user authentication using login user names and login passwords. To perform authentication, the authentication function must be enabled.

# Specifying Authentication Information to Log on

Users are managed using the personal information managed in the printer's address book.

Enabling user authentication limits usage of printer to people registered in the address book to use the printer. Users can be managed in the address book by the user administrator.

# Specifying Which Functions are Available

This can be specified by the user administrator. Specify the functions available to registered users. By making this setting, administrators can limit the functions available to users.

# **Preventing Information Leaks**

## Guarding Against Unauthorized Copying (Unauthorized Copy Prevention)

Using the printer driver, mask and pattern can be embedded in the printed document.

# Guarding Against Unauthorized Copying (Data security for copying)

Using the printer driver with the data security for the copying function, a document can be printed with an embedded pattern of hidden text.

To gray out the copy or stored file of a copy-guarded document when the document is copied or stored, the optional security module is required.

## Printing confidential files

Using the printer's Locked Print, files can be stored in the printer as confidential files and then print them. Those file can be printed using the printer's control panel and collected on the spot to prevent others from seeing it.

#### Preventing Data Leaks Due to Unauthorized Transmission

You can specify in the address book which users are allowed to send files using the scanner or fax function.

You can also limit the direct entry of destinations to prevent files from being sent to destinations not registered in the address book.

# Protecting Registered Information in the Address Book

This function allows administrator to specify which users have permission to access the data in the address book. Usage of the data in the address book by unregistered users can be prevented.

Administrator can also encrypt the data in the address book to protect the data from unauthorized reading.

#### **Managing Log Files**

Data security can by improved by deleting log files stored in the printer. By transferring the log files, administrator can check the history data and identify unauthorized access.

To transfer the log data, the log collection server is required.

#### Overwriting the Data on the Hard Disk

Before disposing of the printer, make sure all data on the hard disk is deleted. Prevent data leakage by automatically deleting transmitted printer jobs from memory.

To overwrite the hard disk data, the optional ipp unit is required.

# **Limiting and Controlling Access**

# Preventing Modification or Deletion of Stored Data

Users with access permission to stored files can be specified. Permit selected users who have to access permissions to stored files to modify or delete the files.

# **Preventing Modification of Printer Settings**

The printer settings that can be modified depend on the type of administrator account.

Register the administrators so that users cannot change the administrator settings.

# **Limiting Available Functions**

This function allows administrator to specify which users have accessibility to each of the printer's functions, to prevent unauthorized operation.

# **Enhanced Network Security**

# **Preventing Unauthorized Access**

Limit IP addresses or disable ports to prevent unauthorized access over the network and protect the address book, stored files, and default settings.

# **Encrypting Transmitted Passwords**

Prevent login passwords, group passwords for PDF files, and IPP authentication passwords being revealed by encrypting them for transmission.

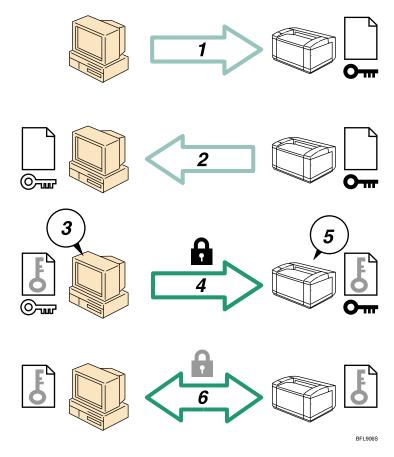
Also, encrypt the login password for administrator authentication and user authentication.

# **Configuring SSL Encryption**

When you access the printer using a Web Image Monitor or IPP, you can establish encrypted communication using SSL.

When you access the printer using an application such as SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can establish encrypted communication using SNMPv3 or SSL. To protect data from interception, analysis, and tampering, you can install a server certificate in the printer, negotiate a secure connection, and encrypt transmitted data.

# SSL (SSL (Secure Sockets Layer)Secure Sockets Layer)



- 1. To access the printer from a user's computer, request for the SSL server certificate and public key.
- 2. The server certificate and public key are sent from the printer to the user's computer.
- 3. Create shared key from the user's computer, and then encrypt it using public key.
- 4. The encrypted shared key is sent to the printer.
- 5. The encrypted shared key is decrypted in the machine using private key.

6. Transmit the encrypted data using the shared key, and then decrypt the data at the machine to attain secure transmission.

# 11. Appendix

This chapter describes the contents of the provided CD-ROM. It also contains notes and warnings regarding use of this printer.

# Software and Utilities Included on the CD-ROM

This section explains the software and utilities included on the "Printer Drivers and Utilities" CD-ROM that comes with this printer.

# Font Manager

For installing new screen fonts, or organizing and managing fonts already in the system. For details about Font Manager, see the manual on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

#### SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

For the system administrator to manage network printers.

# DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

For users to manage their network print status.

## **Printer Utility for Mac**

This utility allows users to download and manage a variety of fonts as well as manage printers. For details about this utility, see "Printer Utility for Mac".



Some documentation about using the machine is included on the CD-ROM in PDF format. For details
about using Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader, see Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader
online Help.

# ■ Reference

• p.338 "Printer Utility for Mac"

# Viewing the contents of the CD-ROM

This section explains how to view the contents of the CD-ROM.

1. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.

The installer starts.

2. Click [Browse This CD-ROM].

Explorer starts and displays the contents of the CD-ROM.

# **Printer Drivers for This Printer**

This section explains printer drivers for this printer.



You can install the PCL printer drivers (PCL 5c and PCL 6), the RPCS printer driver, and the Adobe
PostScript printer drivers from the CD-ROM provided with this machine or download them from the
supplier's Web site. If your operating system is Windows XP x64/ Vista x64, Windows Server
2003/2003 R2 x64, you must download the printer drivers from the supplier's Web site. Select this
machine and the operating system you are using, and then download them.

Printing requires installation of a printer driver for your operating system. The following drivers are included on the CD-ROM labeled "Printer Drivers and Utilities".

Printer Language	PCL 6	PCL 5c	RPCS	PostScript 3
Windows 2000 * 1	OK	OK	OK	ОК
Windows XP *2	OK	OK	OK	ОК
Windows Vista *3	OK	OK	OK	ОК
Windows Server 2003 *4	OK	OK	OK	ОК
Mac OS *5	-	-	-	OK
Mac OS X *6	-	-	-	OK

- \* 1 Microsoft Windows 2000 Professional / Microsoft Windows 2000 Server/Microsoft Windows 2000 Advanced Server
- \*2 Microsoft Windows XP Professional/Microsoft Windows XP Home Edition
- \*3 Microsoft Windows Vista Ultimate/Microsoft Windows Vista Enterprise/Microsoft Windows Vista Business/ Microsoft Windows Vista Home Premium/Microsoft Windows Vista Home Basic
- \*4 Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Standard Edition/Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Enterprise Edition/Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Web Edition/Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Datacenter Edition/Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Standard Edition/Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition/Microsoft Windows Server 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition
- \*5 Versions 8.6 to 9.2 of the Mac OS (Mac OS X Classic mode is supported.)
- \*6 Mac OS X 10.1 or later (Native mode)

#### PCL printer driver

Two kinds of PCL printer driver (PCL 5c and PCL 6) are included. These drivers allow your computer to communicate with this machine via a printer language. To use these drivers, the Printer Enhance Option is required.

# **RPCS** printer driver

This printer driver allows the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. In addition to the conventional user interface, another preset user interface is provided.

## Adobe PostScript Printer Drivers and PPD files

Adobe PostScript printer drivers allow the computer to communicate with the printer using a printer language. PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions. These drivers require the PostScript 3 Unit.

# **PPD** files

PPD files allow the printer driver to enable specific printer functions.



- Some applications may require installation of the PCL 5c printer driver. In this case, you can install PCL 5c without having to install PCL 6.
- For details, see "Preparing for Printing" and "Setting Up the Printer Driver".

# Reference

- p.19 "Preparing for Printing"
- p.65 "Setting Up the Printer Driver"

#### SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

This section describes the file path and available functions of SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is an application that uses TCP/IP and IPX/SPX to monitor network printers. It can monitor multiple network printers using IP address. We recommend that network administrators use this application.

#### File path

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

#### \NETWORK\DEVMON\ADMIN\DISK1

Operating system	Protocol stack
Windows 2000	TCP/IP provided with Windows 2000 IPX/SPX provided with Windows 2000 NetWare Client provided with Windows 2000 Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Window NT
Windows XP	TCP/IP provided with Windows XP IPX/SPX provided with Windows XP NetWare Client provided with Windows XP

П

Operating system	Protocol stack
	Novell Client provided with Windows XP
Windows Vista	TCP/IP provided with Windows Vista  Novell Client provided with Windows Vista
Windows Server 2003	TCP/IP provided with Windows Server 2003 IPX/SPX provided with Windows Server 2003 NetWare Client provided with Windows Server 2003 Novell Client provided with Windows Server 2003

#### Available functions

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin has the following functions to check the followings:

- Printer supplies such as paper or toner
- Results of print jobs executed from the computer



• For information about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

# DeskTopBinder - SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

This section describes the file path and system requirements of DeskTopBinder-SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client has the following functions. We recommend that users install this application.

- Printing in a peer-to-peer network, using TCP/IP, and IPP from Windows 2000/XP/Vista or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2.
- Constantly monitoring the status of devices on the network using TCP/IP and IPX/SPX.



- To perform Recovery or Parallel printing, the same options that are installed on the original printer
  must be installed on the other printers also. Printers that lack a required option cannot be used for
  Recovery or Parallel printing.
- To perform Recovery or Parallel printing, the same paper loaded in the original printer must be loaded
  in the other printers also. Load all printers with the same paper as that loaded in the tray selected for
  printing.
- Results of Recovery or Parallel Printing might differ, depending on the model of the other printer and the options installed on it.
- If you select Sample Print or Locked Print, you cannot select Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is stored in the following folder on the CD-ROM.

#### \NETWORK\DEVMON\CLIENT\DISK1

Operating system	Protocol stack
Windows 2000	TCP/IP provided with Windows 2000
	IPX/SPX provided with Windows 2000
	NetWare Client provided with Windows 2000
	Novell Client provided with Windows 2000 or Window NT
Windows XP	TCP/IP provided with Windows XP
	IPX/SPX provided with Windows XP
	NetWare Client provided with Windows XP
	Novell Client provided with Windows XP
Windows Vista	TCP/IP provided with Windows Vista
	Novell Client provided with Windows Vista
Windows Server 2003	TCP/IP provided with Windows Server 2003
	IPX/SPX provided with Windows Server 2003
	NetWare Client provided with Windows Server 2003
	Novell Client provided with Windows Server 2003

#### Available functions

SmartDeviceMonitor for Client has the following functions.

- Peer-to-peer print function
  - Prints directly on the network printer without sending any data to a print server.
  - Prints on a substitute printer when there are too many jobs waiting on the specified printer, or when an error disables printing (Recovery Printing).
  - Allocates multiple print jobs to multiple printers (Parallel Printing).
  - Executes prior group registration of printers specified for Recovery Printing or Parallel Printing.
- Notification function
  - Displays an error message when there is an error on the specified printer while transferring or printing data.
  - Notifies a print completion. You can also be notified of the print condition, such as displaying the notice only when Recovery Printing is executed.

- Monitoring function
  - Checks printer supplies such as paper or toner.
  - Simultaneously monitors multiple printers in use.
  - Checks the printer's network settings and detailed information of printers.
  - Enables you to check the print job log using the user ID



• For details about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

# **Printing Files Directly from Windows**

You can print files directly using Windows commands. For example, you can print PostScript files for PostScript 3.

#### Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

You can print files directly using "lpr", "rcp", "ftp", or "sftp" command.

#### Setup

Follow the procedure below to make network environment settings.

 Enable TCP/IP with the control panel, and then set up the printer's network environment about TCP/IP including IP addresses.

TCP/IP of the printer is set as default.

2. Install a TCP/IP in Windows to set up the network environment.

Consult the network administrator for the local setting information.

To print under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, install "Printing service for UNIX" as the network application.

# Reference

p.367 "Using DHCP"

# Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address

When a host name is defined, you can specify a printer by host name instead of IP address. The host names vary depending on the network environment.

#### When using DNS

Use the host name set to the data file on the DNS server.

#### When setting the IPv4 address of a printer using DHCP

Use the printer name on the configuration page as the host name.

# Reference

• p.163 "List/Test Print Menu"

#### In other cases

Add the IP address and host name of the network printer to the hosts file on the computer used for printing. Methods of addition vary depending on operating systems.

#### Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

1. Open the hosts file using memo pad files, for instance.

The hosts file is in the following folder:

\WINNT\SYSTEM32\DRIVERS\ETC\HOSTS

"\WINNT" is the directory of the installation destination for Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2.

2. Add an IPv4 or IPv6 address and host name to the hosts file using the following format:

192.168.15.16 host # NP

"192.168.15.16" is the IPv4 address, "host" is the printer's host name, and "#NP" is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between "192.168.15.16" and "host", between "host" and "#NP" respectively, using one line for this format.

2001:DB::100 host # NP

"2001:DB::100" is the IPv6 address, "host" is the printer's host name, and "#NP" is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between "2001:DB::100" and "host", between "host" and "#NP" respectively, using one line for this format.

3. Save the file.



 When using a host name under Windows Server 2003 with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.

# **Printing Commands**

The following explains printing operations using the "lpr", "rcp", "ftp" and "sftp" commands.

Enter commands using the command prompt window. The location of the command prompts varies depending on operating systems:

Windows 2000

[Start] - [Programs] - [Accessories] - [Command Prompt]

Windows XP, Windows Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

[Start] - [All Programs] - [Accessories] - [Command Prompt]



• Match the data format of the file to be printed with the emulation mode of the printer.

- If the message "print requests full" appears, no print jobs can be accepted. Try again when sessions end. For each command, the amount of possible sessions is indicated as follows:
  - lpr: 5 (When the spool printing function is available: 10)
  - rcp, rsh: 5
  - ftp: 3
  - sftp: 3
- Enter the file name in a format including the path from the directory executing commands.
- The "option" specified in a command is an intrinsic printer option and its syntax is similar to printing from UNIX. For details, see UNIX Supplement.

#### lpr

#### When specifying a printer by IP address

c:> lpr -Sprinter's IP address [-Poption] [-ol] \pass name\file name

#### When using a host name instead of an IP address

c:> lpr -Sprinter's host name [-Poption] [-ol] \pass name\file name

When printing a binary file, add the "-ol" option (lowercase O, and lowercase L).

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

c:> lpr -Shost -Pfiletype=RPS -ol C:\PRINT\file1

#### Printing from the virtual printer

C:\>lpr -S "printer's IP address" [-Pvirtual printer name] [-ol] \path name\file
name



• For details about the virtual printer configuration, see "Using the Virtual Printer".

# Reference

• p.121 "Using the Virtual Printer"

#### rcp

First, register the printer's host name in the hosts file.

c:> rcp [-b] \pass name\file name [pass name\file name...] printer's host name:
[option]

In file names, "\*" and "?" can be used as wild cards.

When printing a binary file, add the "-b" option.

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" or "file 2" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

c:> rcp -b C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2 host:filetype=RPS

#### Printing from the virtual printer

c:> rcp [-b] \path name\file name [\path name\file name...] printer's host name:
["virtual printer name"]



• For details about the virtual printer configuration, see "Using the Virtual Printer".

# Reference

• p.121 "Using the Virtual Printer"

# ftp / sftp

Use the "put" or "mput" command according to the number of files to be printed.

#### When one file is printed

ftp> put \pass name\file name [option]

#### Printing from the virtual printer

ftp> put \path name\file name [virtual printer name]

#### When multiple files are printed

ftp> mput \pass name\file name [\pass name\file name...] [option]

Follow the procedure below to print using the "ftp" command.

1. Formulate the printer's IP address or the host name of the hosts file printer as an argument and use the "ftp" command.

% ftp printer's IP address

2. Enter the user name and password, and then press the [Enter] key.

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

User:

Password:

When user authentication is set, enter a login user name and password.

3. When printing a binary file, set the file mode to binary.

ftp> bin

When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

## 4. Specify files to be printed.

The following shows the examples of printing a PostScript file named "file 1" in the "C:\PRINT" directory and printing file 1 and file 2.

```
ftp> put C:\PRINT\file1 filetype=RPS
ftp> mput C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2
```

#### 5. Quit ftp.

ftp> bye

# **U** Note

- "=", ",", "\_", and ";" cannot be used for filenames. File names will be read as option strings.
- If you are using ftp, you cannot specify an option using the "mput" command.
- If you are using ftp, you cannot specify an option using the "pwd" command.
- If you are using sftp, you cannot specify an option using the "cd" command.
- If you are using sftp, you cannot specify an option using the "pwd" command.
- If personal authentication (Basic, Windows, LDAP, or Integrated Server Authentication) is enabled, only authenticated users (users authenticated by login user name and password) can log on.
- For "mput" command, "\*" and "?" can be used as wild cards in file names.
- When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.
- For details about registering the printer's host name to the host file, see "Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address".
- For details about login user name and password, see Security Guide, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about the virtual printer configuration, see "Using the Virtual Printer".

# Reference

• p.121 "Using the Virtual Printer"

# When Using Windows Terminal Service/ MetaFrame

The following explains how to use Windows Terminal Service and Maintenance.

# **Operating Environment**

The following operating systems and MetaFrame versions are supported.

#### Windows NT Server 4.0 Terminal Server Edition

- MetaFrame 1.8 SP3 / FR1+SP3 / SP4
- MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1 / SP2 / FR1

#### Windows 2000 Server / Advanced Server

- MetaFrame 1.8 SP3 / FR1+SP3 / SP4 / FR1+SP4
- MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1 / SP2 / FR1 / FR1+SP2 / FR2 / SP3 / FR2+SP3 / FR3
- MetaFrame Presentation Server 3.0
- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0

#### Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

- MetaFrame XP 1.0 FR3
- MetaFrame Presentation Server 3.0
- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0

# **Supported Printer Drivers**

#### When Windows Terminal Service is operating

- PCL drivers
- PostScript 3
- RPCS drivers



• Some RPCS printer driver functions do not work if Windows Terminal Service is installed.

#### Limitations

The following limitations apply to the Windows Terminal Service environment.

These limitations are built in Windows Terminal Service or MetaFrame.

#### **Windows Terminal Service**

In the Windows Terminal Service environment, some of the printer driver's functions is unavailable. In an environment where Windows Terminal Service is installed, some of the printer driver's functions is unavailable, even if any function of Windows Terminal Service is not used. When you install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client in an environment where the Terminal Service is running on a Windows NT Server 4.0 Terminal Server Edition or the Windows 2000 Server family computer, be sure to install it using the install mode. The following are the two methods of installation using the install mode:

- 1. Use [Add/Remove Programs] in [Control Panel] to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.
- 2. Enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

CHANGE USER /INSTALL

To quit the install mode, enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

CHANGE USER /EXECUTE

#### MetaFrame's [Auto-creating client printers]

Using [Auto-creating client printers] can select a logical printer created by copying the client's local printer data to the MetaFrame server. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- The settings for optional equipment will not be stored in the server after the equipment is
  disconnected. The settings for optional equipment will be restored to its defaults each time the
  client computer logs on to the server.
- When printing a large number of bitmap images or using the server in a WAN environment over dial-up lines such as ISDN, printing may not be possible or errors may occur, depending on data transfer rates.
- When using MetaFrame XP 1.0 or higher versions, we recommend making settings in [Client Printer bandwidth] under [Citrix Management Console] according to the environment.
- If a print error occurs on the server and the print job or a printer created in [Auto-creating client printers] cannot be deleted, we recommend the following:
  - MetaFrame 1.8 SP3, MetaFrame XP 1.0 SP1/FR1
     Make settings in [Delete unfinished print jobs] in the registry. For details, see the Readme file provided with MetaFrame.
  - MetaFrame XP 1.0 FR2

Make settings in [Delete pending print jobs at logout] under [Printer Properties Management] of Citrix Management Console.

#### MetaFrame's [Printer driver replication]

Using [Printer driver replication] can distribute printer drivers across all servers in a server farm. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

• If the printer drivers are not properly copied, install them directly onto each server.



• For more information, see Windows Help.

# **Using DHCP**

You can use the printer in a DHCP environment. You can also register the printer NetBIOS name on a WINS server when it is running.

- Printers that register the printer NetBIOS name on a WINS server must be configured for the WINS server.
- Supported DHCP servers are Microsoft DHCP Server included with Windows 2000 Server, Windows Server 2003, and Windows NT 4.0, and the DHCP server included with NetWare and UNIX.
- If you do not use the WINS server, reserve the printer's IP address in the DHCP server so the same IP address is assigned every time.
- To use the WINS server, change the WINS server setting to "active" using the control panel.
- Using the WINS server, you can configure the host name via the remote network printer port.
- DHCP relay-agent is not supported. If you use DHCP relay-agent on a network via ISDN, it will result
  in increased line charges. This is because your computer connects to the ISDN line whenever a packet
  is transferred from the printer.
- If there is more than one DHCP server, use the same setting for all servers. The printer operates using data from the DHCP server that responds first.
- DHCP servers can operate in an IPv6 environment, but they cannot be configured to allocate IPv6 addresses or obtain host names.

# Using AutoNet

If the printer IPv4 address is not automatically assigned by the DHCP server, a temporary IP address starting with 169.254 and not used on the network can be automatically selected by the printer.



- The IP address assigned by the DHCP server is given priority over that selected by AutoNet.
- You can confirm the current IPv4 address on the configuration page. For more information about the configuration page, see General Settings Guide.
- When AutoNet is running, the NetBIOS name is not registered on the WINS server.
- The printer cannot communicate with devices that do not have the AutoNet function. However, this printer can communicate with Macintosh computers running Mac OS X 10.2.3. or higher.

# Configuring the WINS Server

The printer can be configured to register its NetBIOS name with a WINS server when the power is turned on. This enables the NetBIOS name of the printer to be specified from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin even in a DHCP environment.

This section explains configuring the WINS server.



- The WINS server is supported with Windows NT 4.0 Server Service Pack 4 or higher, and Windows 2000 Servers WINS Manager.
- For details about the WINS server settings, see Windows Help.
- If there is no reply from the WINS server, the NetBIOS name is registered by broadcast.
- The NetBIOS name can be entered using up to 13 alphanumeric characters.

# **Using Web Image Monitor**

- 1. Start a Web browser.
- 2. Enter "http://(printer's IP address or host name) /" in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

3. Click [Login].

The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.

4. Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].

Contact your administrator for information about the settings.

- 5. In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [Network].
- 6. Click [TCP/IP].
- Check that [Enable] is selected for [WINS] in the [Ethernet + Wireless LAN] column, and then
  enter the WINS server IPv4 address in [Primary WINS Server] and [Secondary WINS
  Server].
- 8. Click [Apply].
- 9. Quit Web Image Monitor.

# Using telnet

You can also use telnet to configure WINS.

# **Using the Dynamic DNS Function**

Dynamic DNS is a function which dynamically updates (registers and deletes) records (A record, AAAA record, CNAME, and PTR record) managed by the DNS server. When a DNS server is part of the network environment to which this printer, a DNS client, is connected, records can be dynamically updated using this function.

# **Updating**

Updating procedure varies depending on whether the printer IP address is static or acquired by DHCP.



• Dynamic update using message authentication (TSIG, SIG(0)) is not supported.

#### For a static IPv4 setting

If the IP address or host name is changed, the A and PTR records are updated. If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

Ethernet and Wireless LAN
 RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)

 However, if CNAME (PRNXXXXXX) overlaps with the host name, CNAME will not be registered.

#### For DHCPv4 settings

As a substitute for the printer, the DHCP server updates the record, and one of the following occurs:

- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the DHCP server updates the A
  and PTR records.
- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the printer updates the A record, and the DHCP server updates the PTR record.

If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

Ethernet and Wireless LAN

RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)

#### For IPv6 settings

This printer updates the AAAA record and PTR record.

It also updates CNAME when the AAAA record is updated.

When a stateless address is newly set, it is automatically registered on the DNS server also.



- When the dynamic DNS function is not used, records managed by the DNS server must be updated manually, if the printer's IP address is changed.
- To update the record using the printer, the DNS server has to have one of the following:

Ш

- No security settings made.
- If security settings are made, an IP-specified client (this printer) permits updating.

# **DNS Servers Targeted for Operation**

#### For static IP setting

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

#### For DHCP setup, when the printer updates the A record

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features
- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features

#### For DHCP setup, when the DHCP server updates records

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher
- DNS servers with standard NetWare 5 (or a higher version) features

#### For IPv6 setting

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows Server 2003 features
- BIND 9.2.3 or higher

# **DHCP Servers Targeted for Operation**

As a substitute for the printer, DHCP servers capable of updating the A record and PTR record are as follows:

- Microsoft DHCP servers with standard Windows 2000 Server (Service Pack 3 or higher versions)/ Windows Server 2003 features
- ISC DHCP 3.0 or higher
- DHCP server with standard NetWare 5 features

# **Setting the Dynamic DNS Function**

Make settings with telnet using the "dns" command.



For details, see "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

Reference

• p.227 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

# **Precautions**

Please pay attention to the following when using the network interface board. When configuration is necessary, follow the appropriate procedures below.

# Connecting a Dial-Up Router to a Network

# When using NetWare (file server)

If the NetWare file server and printer are on opposite sides of a router, packets are sent back and forth continuously, possibly incurring communications charges. Because packet transmission is a feature of NetWare, you need to change the configuration of the router. If the network you are using does not allow you to configure the router, configure the printer instead.

## Configuring the router

Filter packets so they do not pass over the dial-up router.

#### Configuring the printer with NetWare

- 1. Following the setup method described earlier in this manual, configure the file server.
- 2. Set the frame type for NetWare environment.

#### Configuring the printer without NetWare

 When not printing, the network interface board sends packets over the network. Set NetWare to "Inactive".



- The MAC address of the filtering printer is printed on the printer configuration page. For more
  information about printing a configuration page, see "Printing the Configuration Page", Quick
  Installation Guide.
- For more information about configuring the printer if the router cannot be configured, see the following instructions.
- For more information about selecting a frame type, see "Configuration", Hardware Guide.
- For more information about selecting a protocol, see "Configuration", Hardware Guide.

# When the Wireless LAN Interface Unit is Installed

When using the wireless LAN interface on the network, note the following:

#### When moving the printer

Detach the antennas when relocating the printer locally.

After moving the printer, reattach the antennas, ensuring that:

- The antennas are positioned clear of obstacles.
- There is 40 to 60 mm between the antennas, so that they do not touch.
- The exposure glass cover and the Auto Document Feeder (ADF) do not knock the antennas.

## If the network area provides poor radio environment

Where radio wave conditions are bad, the network may not function due to interrupted or failed connections. When checking the wireless LAN signal and the access point, follow the procedure below to improve the situation:

- Position the access point nearer to the printer.
- Clear the space between access point and printer of obstructions.
- Move radio wave generating appliances, such as microwaves, away from the printer and access point.



- For information about how to check radio wave status, see "Host Interface Menu".
- For more information about access point radio wave conditions, refer to the access point manual.

# Reference

• p.186 "Host Interface Menu"

# Copyright Information about Installed Applications

#### expat

- The software including controller, etc. (hereinafter "software") installed on this product uses the expat under the conditions mentioned below.
- The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including the
  expat, and the product manufacturer makes the initial developer and copyright holder of the expat,
  free from these obligations.
- Information relating to the expat is available at:

http://expat.sourceforge.net/

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Centre, Ltd. and Clark Cooper.

Copyright (c) 2001, 2002 Expat maintainers.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

# 11

#### **NetBSD**

1. Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at http://www.netbsd.org/.

Copyright (c) 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
  - This product includes software developed by The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- 4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

#### 2. Authors Name List

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks or registered trade-marks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation.
- This product includes software developed by The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project. See http://www.netbsd.org/ for information about NetBSD.
- This product contains software developed by Ignatios Souvatzis for the NetBSD project.
- This product contains software written by Ignatios Souvatzis and Michaell. Hitch for the NetBSD project.
- This product contains software written by Michael L. Hitch for the NetBSD project.
- This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young(eay@cryptsoft.com)

- This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young(eay@mincom.oz.au)
- This product includes software designed by William Allen Simpson.
- This product includes software developed at Ludd, University of Lulea, Sweden and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed at Ludd, University of Lulea.
- This product includes software developed at the Information Technology Division, US Naval Research Laboratory.
- This product includes software developed by Berkeley Software Design, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by David Jones and Gordon Ross
- This product includes software developed by Gordon W. Ross and Leo Weppelman.
- This product includes software developed by Hellmuth Michaelis and Joerg Wunsch
- This product includes software developed by Internet Research Institute, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Leo Weppelman and Waldi Ravens.
- This product includes software developed by Mika Kortelainen
- This product includes software developed by Aaron Brown and Harvard University.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Ciarcinski for the NetBSD project.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Advanced Risc Machines Ltd.
- This product includes software developed by Alex Zepeda, and Colin Wood for the NetBSD Projet.
- This product includes software developed by Alex Zepeda.
- This product includes software developed by Alistair G. Crooks.
- This product includes software developed by Alistair G. Crooks. for the NetBSD project.
- This product includes software developed by Allen Briggs
- This product includes software developed by Amancio Hasty and Roger Hardiman
- This product includes software developed by Berkeley Software Design, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Berkeley Software Design, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Bill Paul.
- This product includes software developed by Bodo Moeller. (If available, substitute umlauted o for oe)
- This product includes software developed by Boris Popov.
- This product includes software developed by Brad Pepers
- This product includes software developed by Bradley A. Grantham.
- This product includes software developed by Brini.
- This product includes software developed by Causality Limited.

- This product includes software developed by Charles D. Cranor and Seth Widoff.
- This product includes software developed by Charles D. Cranor and Washington University.
- This product includes software developed by Charles D. Cranor, Washington
- University, and the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Charles D. Cranor, Washington University, the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Charles D. Cranor.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum, by the University of Vermont and State Agricultural College and Garrett A.Wollman, by William F. Jolitz, and by the University of California, Berkeley, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christian E. Hopps, Ezra Story, Kari Mettinen, Markus Wild, Lutz Vieweg and Michael Teske.
- This product includes software developed by Christian E. Hopps.
- This product includes software developed by Christian Limpach
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Chuck Silvers.
- This product includes software developed by Colin Wood for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Colin Wood.
- This product includes software developed by Cybernet Corporation and Nan Yang Computer Services Limited
- This product includes software developed by Daishi Kato
- This product includes software developed by Dale Rahn.
- This product includes software developed by Daniel Widenfalk and Michael L. Hitch.
- This product includes software developed by Daniel Widenfalk for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Darrin B. Jewell
- This product includes software developed by David Miller.
- This product includes software developed by Dean Huxley.
- This product includes software developed by Eduardo Horvath.
- This product includes software developed by Eric S. Hvozda.
- This product includes software developed by Eric S. Raymond

- This product includes software developed by Eric Young (eay@@mincom.oz.au)
- This product includes software developed by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)
- This product includes software developed by Eric Young (eay@mincom.oz.au)
- This product includes software developed by Ezra Story and by Kari Mettinen.
- This product includes software developed by Ezra Story, by Kari Mettinen and by Bernd Ernesti.
- This product includes software developed by Ezra Story, by Kari Mettinen, Michael Teske and by Bernd Ernesti.
- This product includes software developed by Ezra Story, by Kari Mettinen, and Michael Teske.
- This product includes software developed by Ezra Story.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Gardner Buchanan.
- This product includes software developed by Gary Thomas.
- This product includes software developed by Gordon Ross
- This product includes software developed by Gordon W. Ross
- This product includes software developed by HAYAKAWA Koichi.
- This product includes software developed by Harvard University and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Harvard University.
- This product includes software developed by Herb Peyerl.
- This product includes software developed by Hubert Feyrer for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Iain Hibbert
- This product includes software developed by Ian F. Darwin and others.
- This product includes software developed by Ian W. Dall.
- This product includes software developed by Ichiro FUKUHARA.
- This product includes software developed by Ignatios Souvatzis for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Internet Initiative Japan Inc.
- This product includes software developed by James R. Maynard III.
- This product includes software developed by Jared D. McNeill.
- · This product includes software developed by Jason L. Wright
- This product includes software developed by Jason R. Thorpe for And Communications, http://www.and.com/
- This product includes software developed by Joachim Koenig-Baltes.
- This product includes software developed by Jochen Pohl for The NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Joerg Wunsch
- This product includes software developed by John Birrell.

- This product includes software developed by John P. Wittkoski.
- This product includes software developed by John Polstra.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jukka Marin.
- This product includes software developed by Julian Highfield.
- This product includes software developed by Kazuhisa Shimizu.
- This product includes software developed by Kazuki Sakamoto.
- This product includes software developed by Kenneth Stailey.
- This product includes software developed by Kiyoshi Ikehara.
- This product includes software developed by Klaus Burkert, by Bernd Ernesti, by Michael van Elst, and by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by LAN Media Corporation and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Leo Weppelman for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Leo Weppelman.
- This product includes software developed by Lloyd Parkes.
- This product includes software developed by Luke Mewburn.
- This product includes software developed by Lutz Vieweg.
- This product includes software developed by MINOURA Makoto, Takuya Harakawa.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Marc Horowitz.
- This product includes software developed by Marcus Comstedt.
- This product includes software developed by Mark Brinicombe for the NetBSD project.
- This product includes software developed by Mark Brinicombe.
- This product includes software developed by Mark Murray
- This product includes software developed by Mark Tinguely and Jim Lowe
- This product includes software developed by Markus Wild.
- This product includes software developed by Martin Husemann and Wolfgang Solfrank.
- This product includes software developed by Masanobu Saitoh.
- This product includes software developed by Masaru Oki.
- This product includes software developed by Mats O Jansson and Charles D.Cranor.
- This product includes software developed by Mats O Jansson.

- This product includes software developed by Matt DeBergalis
- This product includes software developed by Matthew Fredette.
- This product includes software developed by Matthias Pfaller.
- This product includes software developed by Michael Graff for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Michael Graff.
- This product includes software developed by Michael L. Hitch.
- This product includes software developed by Michael Shalayeff.
- This product includes software developed by Michael Smith.
- This product includes software developed by Mike Glover and contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Mike Pritchard.
- This product includes software developed by Minoura Makoto.
- This product includes software developed by Nan Yang Computer Services Limited.
- This product includes software developed by Niels Provos.
- This product includes software developed by Niklas Hallqvist, Brandon Creighton and Job de Haas.
- This product includes software developed by Niklas Hallqvist.
- This product includes software developed by Onno van der Linden.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Mackerras.
- This product includes software developed by Per Fogelstrom
- This product includes software developed by Peter Galbavy.
- This product includes software developed by Phase One, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Philip A. Nelson.
- This product includes software developed by Philip L. Budne.
- This product includes software developed by RiscBSD.
- This product includes software developed by Roar Thronaes.
- This product includes software developed by Rodney W. Grimes.
- This product includes software developed by Roger Hardiman
- This product includes software developed by Roland C. Dowdeswell.
- This product includes software developed by Rolf Grossmann.
- This product includes software developed by Ross Harvey for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Ross Harvey.
- This product includes software developed by Scott Bartram.
- This product includes software developed by Scott Stevens.

- This product includes software developed by Shingo WATANABE.
- This product includes software developed by Softweyr LLC, the University of California, Berkeley, and
  its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Soren S. Jorvang.
- This product includes software developed by Stephan Thesing.
- This product includes software developed by Steve Woodford.
- This product includes software developed by Takashi Hamada
- This product includes software developed by Takumi Nakamura.
- This product includes software developed by Tatoku Ogaito for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Tetsuya Isaki.
- This product includes software developed by Thomas Gerner
- This product includes software developed by Thomas Klausner for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Tobias Weingartner.
- This product includes software developed by Todd C. Miller.
- This product includes software developed by Tohru Nishimura and Reinoud Zandijk for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Tohru Nishimura for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Tohru Nishimura. for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Tools GmbH.
- This product includes software developed by Toru Nishimura.
- This product includes software developed by Trimble Navigation, Ltd.
- This product includes software developed by WIDE Project and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Waldi Ravens.
- This product includes software developed by Wasabi Systems for Zembu Labs, Inc. http://www.zembu.com/
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Wolfgang Solfrank.
- This product includes software developed by Yasushi Yamasaki
- This product includes software developed by Zembu Labs, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by the Alice Group.
- This product includes software developed by the Center for Software Science at the University of Utah.
- This product includes software developed by the Charles D. Cranor, Washington University, University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.

- This product includes software developed by the Computer Systems Engineering Group at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.
- This product includes software developed by the David Muir Sharnoff.
- This product includes software developed by the Harvard University and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by the Kungliga Tekniska Hogskolan and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by the Network Research Group at Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.
- This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.OpenSSL.org/)
- This product includes software developed by the PocketBSD project and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by the RiscBSD kernel team
- This product includes software developed by the RiscBSD team.
- This product includes software developed by the SMCC Technology Development Group at Sun Microsystems, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors, as well as the Trustees of Columbia University.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory.
- This product includes software developed by the University of Illinois at Urbana and their contributors.
- This product includes software developed by the University of Vermont and State Agricultural College and Garrett A. Wollman.
- This product includes software developed by the University of Vermont and State Agricultural College and Garrett A. Wollman, by William F. Jolitz, and by the University of California, Berkeley, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory, and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed for the FreeBSD project
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Bernd Ernesti.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Christos Zoulas
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Emmanuel Dreyfus.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Ignatios Souvatzis.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by John M. Vinopal.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Matthias Drochner.

- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Michael L. Hitch.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Perry E. Metzger.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Scott Bartram and Frank van der Linden
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Allegro Networks, Inc., and Wasabi Systems, Inc.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Genetec Corporation.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Piermont Information Systems Inc.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by SUNET, Swedish University Computer Network.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Shigeyuki Fukushima.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Wasabi Systems, Inc.
- This product includes software developed under OpenBSD by Per Fogelstrom Opsycon AB for RTMX Inc, North Carolina, USA.
- This product includes software developed under OpenBSD by Per Fogelstrom.
- This software is a component of "386BSD" developed by William F. Jolitz, TeleMuse.
- This software was developed by Holger Veit and Brian Moore for use with "386BSD" and similar operating systems. "Similar operating systems" includes mainly non-profit oriented systems for research and education, including but not restricted to "NetBSD", "FreeBSD", "Mach" (by CMU).
- This software includes software developed by the Computer Systems Laboratory at the University of Utah.
- This product includes software developed by Computing Services at Carnegie Mellon University (http://www.cmu.edu/computing/).
- This product includes software developed by Allen Briggs.

In the following statement, "This software" refers to the Mitsumi CD-ROM driver:

 This software was developed by Holger Veit and Brian Moore for use with "386BSD" and similar operating systems. "Similar operating systems" includes mainly non-profit oriented systems for research and education, including but not restricted to "NetBSD", "FreeBSD", "Mach" (by CMU).

In the following statement, "This software" refers to the parallel port driver:

• This software is a component of "386BSD" developed by William F. Jolitz, TeleMuse.

# Netatalk(NetBSD)/NetaTalk 1.4b2+asun2.1.3

Copyright (c) 1990,1991 Regents of The University of Michigan. All Rights Reserved.

# FreeBSD 4.6.2/netipx

Copyright (c) 1984, 1985, 1986, 1987, 1993

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Modifications Copyright (c) 1995, Mike Mitchell

Modifications Copyright (c) 1995, John Hay

#### Sablotron

Sablotron (Version 0.82) Copyright (c) 2000 Ginger Alliance Ltd. All Rights Reserved

- a) The application software installed on this product includes the Sablotron software Version 0.82 (hereinafter, "Sablotron 0.82"), with modifications made by the product manufacturer. The original code of the Sablotron 0.82 is provided by Ginger Alliance Ltd., the initial developer, and the modified code of the Sablotron 0.82 has been derived from such original code provided by Ginger Alliance Ltd.
- b) The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the application software of this product including the Sablotron 0.82 as modified, and the product manufacturer makes Ginger Alliance Ltd., the initial developer of the Sablotron 0.82, free from these obligations.
- c) The Sablotron 0.82 and the modifications thereof are made available under the terms of Mozilla Public License Version 1.1 (hereinafter, "MPL 1.1"), and the application software of this product constitutes the "Larger Work" as defined in MPL 1.1. The application software of this product except for the Sablotron 0.82 as modified is licensed by the product manufacturer under separate agreement(s).
- d) The source code of the modified code of the Sablotron 0.82 is available at: http://support-download.com/services/device/sablot/notice082.html
- e) The source code of the Sablotron software is available at: http://www.gingerall.com
- f) MPL 1.1 is available at: http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/MPL-1.1.html

#### JPEG LIBRARY

The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

#### **SASL**

CMU libsasl

Tim Martin

Rob Earhart

Rob Siemborski

Copyright (c) 2001 Carnegie Mellon University. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. The name "Carnegie Mellon University" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission.

For permission or any other legal details, please contact:

Office of Technology Transfer

Carnegie Mellon University

5000 Forbes Avenue

Pittsburgh, PA 15213-3890

(412) 268-4387, fax: (412) 268-7395

tech-transfer@andrew.cmu.edu

 Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by Computing Services at Carnegie Mellon University (http://www.cmu.edu/computing/)."

CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

## Samba(Ver 3.0.4)

For SMB transmission, this machine uses Samba ver 3.0.4 (hereinafter referred to as Samba 3.0.4). Copyright (c) Andrew Tridgell 1994-1998

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.



• The source code for SMB transmission by this machine can be downloaded from the following website: http://support-download.com/services/scbs

# RSA BSAFE®



- This product includes RSA BSAFE (c) cryptographic software from RSA Security Inc.
- RSA, BSAFE are either registered trademarks or trademarks of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- RSA Security Inc. All rights reserved.

# **Open SSL**

Copyright (c) 1998-2004 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:
- "This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (http://www.openssl.org/)"
- 4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

- 5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.
- 6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (http://www.openssl.org/)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com).

The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (eay@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related:-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence [including the GNU Public Licence.]

# **Open SSH**

The licences which components of this software fall under are as follows. First, we will summarize and say that all components are under a BSD licence, or a licence more free than that.

OpenSSH contains no GPL code.

1)

Copyright (c) 1995 Tatu Ylonen <ylo@cs.hut.fi>, Espoo, Finland All rights reserved

As far as I am concerned, the code I have written for this software can be used freely for any purpose. Any derived versions of this software must be clearly marked as such, and if the derived work is incompatible with the protocol description in the RFC file, it must be called by a name other than "ssh" or "Secure Shell".

[Tatu continues]

However, I am not implying to give any licenses to any patents or copyrights held by third parties, and the software includes parts that are not under my direct control. As far as I know, all included source code is used in accordance with the relevant license agreements and can be used freely for any purpose (the GNU license being the most restrictive); see below for details.

[However, none of that term is relevant at this point in time. All of these restrictively licenced software components which he talks about have been removed from OpenSSH, i.e.,

- RSA is no longer included, found in the OpenSSL library
- IDEA is no longer included, its use is deprecated
- DES is now external, in the OpenSSL library
- GMP is no longer used, and instead we call BN code from OpenSSL

- Zlib is now external, in a library
- The make-ssh-known-hosts script is no longer included
- TSS has been removed
- MD5 is now external, in the OpenSSL library
- RC4 support has been replaced with ARC4 support from OpenSSL
- Blowfish is now external, in the OpenSSL library

[The licence continues]

Note that any information and cryptographic algorithms used in this software are publicly available on the Internet and at any major bookstore, scientific library, and patent office worldwide. More information can be found e.g. at "http://www.cs.hut.fi/crypto".

The legal status of this program is some combination of all these permissions and restrictions. Use only at your own responsibility. You will be responsible for any legal consequences yourself; I am not making any claims whether possessing or using this is legal or not in your country, and I am not taking any responsibility on your behalf.

#### **NO WARRANTY**

BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION.

IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2)

The 32-bit CRC compensation attack detector in deattack.c was contributed by CORE SDI S.A. under a BSD-style license.

Cryptographic attack detector for ssh - source code

Copyright (c) 1998 CORE SDI S.A., Buenos Aires, Argentina.

All rights reserved. Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that this copyright notice is retained.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL CORE SDI S.A. BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM THE USE OR MISUSE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Ariel Futoransky <futo@core-sdi.com>

<a href="http://www.core-sdi.com">http://www.core-sdi.com</a>

3)

One component of the ssh source code is under a 3-clause BSD license, held by the University of California, since we pulled these parts from original Berkeley code.

Copyright (c) 1983, 1990, 1992, 1993, 1995

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

4)

Remaining components of the software are provided under a standard 2-term BSD licence with the following names as copyright holders:

Markus Friedl

Theo de Raadt

Niels Provos

Dug Song

Kevin Steves

Daniel Kouril

Wesley Griffin

Per Allansson

Iason Downs

Solar Designer

Todd C. Miller

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

5)

Portable OpenSSH contains the following additional licenses:

c) Compatibility code (openbsd-compat)

Apart from the previously mentioned licenses, various pieces of code in the openbsd-compat/subdirectory are licensed as follows:

Some code is licensed under a 3-term BSD license, to the following copyright holders:

Todd C. Miller

Theo de Raadt

Damien Miller

Eric P. Allman

The Regents of the University of California

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

# Open LDAP

The OpenLDAP Public License Version 2.8, 17 August 2003

Redistribution and use of this software and associated documentation ("Software"), with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- 1. Redistributions in source form must retain copyright statements and notices,
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce applicable copyright statements and notices, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution, and
- 3. Redistributions must contain a verbatim copy of this document.

The OpenLDAP Foundation may revise this license from time to time. Each revision is distinguished by a version number. You may use this Software under terms of this license revision or under the terms of any subsequent revision of the license.

Ш

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION, ITS CONTRIBUTORS, OR THE AUTHOR(S) OR OWNER(S) OF THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Ш

The names of the authors and copyright holders must not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealing in this Software without specific, written prior permission. Title to copyright in this Software shall at all times remain with copyright holders.

OpenLDAP is a registered trademark of the OpenLDAP Foundation.

Copyright (c) 1999-2003 The OpenLDAP Foundation, Redwood City, California, USA. All Rights Reserved. Permission to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this document is granted.

#### Heimdal

Copyright (c) 1997-2005 Kungliga Tekniska Högskolan (Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, Sweden). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

- Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
- 2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
- 3. Neither the name of the Institute nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE INSTITUTE AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE INSTITUTE OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

# IPS<sup>TM</sup> print language emulations

Copyright (c) 1987-2006 Zoran Corporation. All rights reserved.

#### racoon

Copyright (C) 1995, 1996, 1997, and 1998 WIDE Project.

All rights reserved.

#### **TrouSerS**

THE ACCOMPANYING PROGRAM IS PROVIDED UNDER THE TERMS OF THIS COMMON PUBLIC LICENSE ("AGREEMENT"). ANY USE, REPRODUCTION OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM CONSTITUTES RECIPIENT'S ACCEPTANCE OF THIS AGREEMENT.

#### 1. DEFINITIONS

"Contribution" means:

- a) in the case of the initial Contributor, the initial code and documentation distributed under this Agreement, and
- b) in the case of each subsequent Contributor:
- i) changes to the Program, and
- ii) additions to the Program;

where such changes and/or additions to the Program originate from and are distributed by that particular Contributor. A Contribution 'originates' from a Contributor if it was added to the Program by such Contributor itself or anyone acting on such Contributor's behalf. Contributions do not include additions to the Program which: (i) are separate modules of software distributed in conjunction with the Program under their own license agreement, and (ii) are not derivative works of the Program.

"Contributor" means any person or entity that distributes the Program.

"Licensed Patents" mean patent claims licensable by a Contributor which are necessarily infringed by the use or sale of its Contribution alone or when combined with the Program.

"Program" means the Contributions distributed in accordance with this Agreement.

"Recipient" means anyone who receives the Program under this Agreement, including all Contributors.

#### 2. GRANT OF RIGHTS

- a) Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free copyright license to reproduce, prepare derivative works of, publicly display, publicly perform, distribute and sublicense the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, and such derivative works, in source code and object code form.
- b) Subject to the terms of this Agreement, each Contributor hereby grants Recipient a non-exclusive, worldwide, royalty-free patent license under Licensed Patents to make, use, sell, offer to sell, import and otherwise transfer the Contribution of such Contributor, if any, in source code and object code form. This patent license shall apply to the combination of the Contribution and the Program if, at the time the Contribution is added by the Contributor, such addition of the Contribution causes such combination to be covered by the Licensed Patents. The patent license shall not apply to any other combinations which include the Contribution. No hardware per se is licensed hereunder.
- c) Recipient understands that although each Contributor grants the licenses to its Contributions set forth herein, no assurances are provided by any Contributor that the Program does not infringe the patent or other intellectual property rights of any other entity. Each Contributor disclaims any liability to Recipient for claims brought by any other entity based on infringement of intellectual property rights or otherwise. As a

condition to exercising the rights and licenses granted hereunder, each Recipient hereby assumes sole responsibility to secure any other intellectual property rights needed, if any. For example, if a third party patent license is required to allow Recipient to distribute the Program, it is Recipient's responsibility to acquire that license before distributing the Program.

d) Each Contributor represents that to its knowledge it has sufficient copyright rights in its Contribution, if any, to grant the copyright license set forth in this Agreement.

#### 3. REQUIREMENTS

A Contributor may choose to distribute the Program in object code form under its own license agreement, provided that:

- a) it complies with the terms and conditions of this Agreement; and
- b) its license agreement:
- i) effectively disclaims on behalf of all Contributors all warranties and conditions, express and implied, including warranties or conditions of title and non-infringement, and implied warranties or conditions of merchantability and fitness for a particular purpose;
- ii) effectively excludes on behalf of all Contributors all liability for damages, including direct, indirect, special, incidental and consequential damages, such as lost profits;
- iii) states that any provisions which differ from this Agreement are offered by that Contributor alone and not by any other party; and
- iv) states that source code for the Program is available from such Contributor, and informs licensees how to obtain it in a reasonable manner on or through a medium customarily used for software exchange.

When the Program is made available in source code form:

- a) it must be made available under this Agreement; and
- b) a copy of this Agreement must be included with each copy of the Program.

Contributors may not remove or alter any copyright notices contained within the Program.

Each Contributor must identify itself as the originator of its Contribution, if any, in a manner that reasonably allows subsequent Recipients to identify the originator of the Contribution.

## 4. COMMERCIAL DISTRIBUTION

Commercial distributors of software may accept certain responsibilities with respect to end users, business partners and the like. While this license is intended to facilitate the commercial use of the Program, the Contributor who includes the Program in a commercial product offering should do so in a manner which does not create potential liability for other Contributors. Therefore, if a Contributor includes the Program in a commercial product offering, such Contributor ("Commercial Contributor") hereby agrees to defend and indemnify every other Contributor ("Indemnified Contributor") against any losses, damages and costs (collectively "Losses") arising from claims, lawsuits and other legal actions brought by a third party against the Indemnified Contributor to the extent caused by the acts or omissions of such Commercial Contributor in connection with its distribution of the Program in a commercial product offering. The obligations in this section do not apply to any claims or Losses relating to any actual or alleged intellectual property infringement. In order to qualify, an Indemnified Contributor must: a) promptly notify the Commercial

Contributor in writing of such claim, and b) allow the Commercial Contributor to control, and cooperate with the Commercial Contributor in, the defense and any related settlement negotiations. The Indemnified Contributor may participate in any such claim at its own expense.

For example, a Contributor might include the Program in a commercial product offering, Product X. That Contributor is then a Commercial Contributor. If that Commercial Contributor then makes performance claims, or offers warranties related to Product X, those performance claims and warranties are such Commercial Contributor's responsibility alone. Under this section, the Commercial Contributor would have to defend claims against the other Contributors related to those performance claims and warranties, and if a court requires any other Contributor to pay any damages as a result, the Commercial Contributor must pay those damages.

## 5. NO WARRANTY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, THE PROGRAM IS PROVIDED ON AN "AS IS" BASIS, WITHOUT WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESS OR IMPLIED INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ANY WARRANTIES OR CONDITIONS OF TITLE, NON-INFRINGEMENT, MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. Each Recipient is solely responsible for determining the appropriateness of using and distributing the Program and assumes all risks associated with its exercise of rights under this Agreement, including but not limited to the risks and costs of program errors, compliance with applicable laws, damage to or loss of data, programs or equipment, and unavailability or interruption of operations.

### 6. DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY

EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY SET FORTH IN THIS AGREEMENT, NEITHER RECIPIENT NOR ANY CONTRIBUTORS SHALL HAVE ANY LIABILITY FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION LOST PROFITS), HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OR DISTRIBUTION OF THE PROGRAM OR THE EXERCISE OF ANY RIGHTS GRANTED HEREUNDER, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

## 7. GENERAL

If any provision of this Agreement is invalid or unenforceable under applicable law, it shall not affect the validity or enforceability of the remainder of the terms of this Agreement, and without further action by the parties hereto, such provision shall be reformed to the minimum extent necessary to make such provision valid and enforceable.

If Recipient institutes patent litigation against a Contributor with respect to a patent applicable to software (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit), then any patent licenses granted by that Contributor to such Recipient under this Agreement shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed. In addition, if Recipient institutes patent litigation against any entity (including a cross-claim or counterclaim in a lawsuit) alleging that the Program itself (excluding combinations of the Program with other software or hardware) infringes such Recipient's patent(s), then such Recipient's rights granted under Section 2(b) shall terminate as of the date such litigation is filed.

All Recipient's rights under this Agreement shall terminate if it fails to comply with any of the material terms or conditions of this Agreement and does not cure such failure in a reasonable period of time after becoming aware of such noncompliance. If all Recipient's rights under this Agreement terminate, Recipient agrees to cease use and distribution of the Program as soon as reasonably practicable. However, Recipient's obligations under this Agreement and any licenses granted by Recipient relating to the Program shall continue and survive.

Everyone is permitted to copy and distribute copies of this Agreement, but in order to avoid inconsistency the Agreement is copyrighted and may only be modified in the following manner. The Agreement Steward reserves the right to publish new versions (including revisions) of this Agreement from time to time. No one other than the Agreement Steward has the right to modify this Agreement. IBM is the initial Agreement Steward. IBM may assign the responsibility to serve as the Agreement Steward to a suitable separate entity. Each new version of the Agreement will be given a distinguishing version number. The Program (including Contributions) may always be distributed subject to the version of the Agreement under which it was received. In addition, after a new version of the Agreement is published, Contributor may elect to distribute the Program (including its Contributions) under the new version. Except as expressly stated in Sections 2 (a) and 2(b) above, Recipient receives no rights or licenses to the intellectual property of any Contributor under this Agreement, whether expressly, by implication, estoppel or otherwise. All rights in the Program not expressly granted under this Agreement are reserved.

This Agreement is governed by the laws of the State of New York and the intellectual property laws of the United States of America. No party to this Agreement will bring a legal action under this Agreement more than one year after the cause of action arose. Each party waives its rights to a jury trial in any resulting litigation.



- To obtain the source code for opening TrouSerS (Version 0.27), which is provided with this machine, access the Web site at the following URL: http://www.ricoh.com/support/trousers/index.html
- TrouSerS version control is by SourceForge CVS. For methods of obtaining the source code, access the Web site at the following URL: http://sourceforge.net/cvs/?group\_id=126012

# **INDEX**

A		Counter	163
Access control	229	Cover	120
Adding a Bluetooth printer		D	
Administrator mode		Data security for copying	8.6
Adobe Type Manager, Mac OS		DeskTopBinder Lite	
AppleTalk		DeskTopBinder Lite, enhancements	
Authentication and managing users		DeskTopBinder Lite, function palette	
Auto e-mail notification		DeskTopBinder Lite, password-protect	
AutoNet		DHCP	
В		DHCPv6	
		Dial-up router	
Banner page	46	Direct printing	
Bidirectional communication		Displayed information	
Black and White Printing		Dithering, Mac OS	
Black over print, Mac OS	334	dns	
Bluetooth	234	DNS (Domain Name System)	
Bluetooth connection		Domain name settings	
Bonjour	232, 315	Downloading the printer driver	
C		Duplex printing, Mac OS	
Canceling a print job, control panel	113	Dynamic DNS	
Canceling a print job, Mac OS		E	
Canceling a print job, Windows		_	
CD-ROM		E-mail notification	
Change direct printing port settings		Energy Saver mode	
Changing the password		Enhanced network security	
Changing the port setting		Error log	
Changing the printer name		Ethernet	
Classification code		EtherTalk, Mac OS X	
Classification code, configuring		EtherTalk, Max OS	312
Classification code, for a print job		F	
CMYK simulation profile, Mac OS		Fit to paper, Mac OS	328
Collate		Font catalog, Mac OS	
Collate, Mac OS		Font Manager	
Color matching, Mac OS	336	Font sample, Mac OS	
Color mode, Mac OS	330	Form feed	
Color profile, Mac OS		ftp268, 27	
Color setting, Mac OS	332		
Configuration page	163	G	
Configuring the network interface board	275	Gradation, Mac OS	
Confirming the connection method		Gray reproduction, Mac OS	
Control panel	16	Guest mode	198
Copyright information	374		

н	Login, administrator mode20	0(
Hold Print100	Login, Web Image Monitor19	8
	lpq26	86
Hold Print, deleting	lpr243, 36	60
Hold Print, Mac OS	LPR port3	35
Hold Print, printing	M	
Host Interface menu		_
Host Interface menu, changing186	Mac OS	
Host Interface menu, parameters186	Mac OS X	
Host name240, 359 How to read this manual	Mail authentication	
How to read this manual	Maintenance menu	
I control of the cont	Maintenance menu, changing15	
IEEE 802.11 settings260	Maintenance menu, parameters15	
IEEE 802.1x228	Making option settings5	
Image smoothing, Mac OS334	Manuals	
info	Mask type8	
Input slot, Mac OS	Memory capacity and paper size6	
Installing the printer driver23	Message28	
Installing the software	MetaFrame36	
IPP	MetaFrame, limitations36	
IPsec	MetaFrame, operating environment36	
IPv6	Monitoring printers21	7
	N	
J	NetWare44, 244, 29	00
Job list screen90	NetWare 3.x	
Job spool256	NetWare 4.x	
K	NetWare 5.x	
	NetWare 6.x	
Keys16	Network connection	
L	Network interface board	
Language menu193	Network printer	
Language menu, changing193	Network printer	+ 1
Language menu, parameters193	0	
Launching the Dialogue Console345	On-demand e-mail notification22	22
Level color, Mac OS	Options1	5
Limiting and controlling access	Orientation override, Mac OS32	
List/Test Print menu	P	
•	r	
List/Test Print menu, parameters	Page setup34	
	PageMaker6	
Locked Print, deleting	Paper Input menu, changing15	51
Locked Print, printing	Paper Input menu, parameters15	
Log Off , Web Image Monitor198	Paper size, Mac OS32	28
Log On , Web illuge Molliloi		

Paper type, Mac OS	333	Printer configuration	242, 272
Parallel connection	50	Printer driver23, 41,	, 44, 295, 354
PathMTU Discovery service function	245	Printer driver, PCL	65
PCL	23, 65	Printer driver, PostScript 3	
PDF direct print	81, 83	Printer driver, RPCS	70
PDF direct print, properties	84	Printer fonts, deleting	340
PDF direct print, using commands	85	Printer fonts, displaying	340
PictBridge	131	Printer fonts, downloading	339
PictBridge, camera memo printing	140	Printer hard disk, initializing	341
PictBridge, color matching	139	Printer properties, PCL	65
PictBridge, date and file name printing	136	Printer properties, PostScript 3	76
PictBridge, duplex printing	139	Printer Properties, RPCS	
PictBridge, exiting	141	Printer status213, 2	218, 258, 268
PictBridge, form printing	140	Printer status, displaying	344
PictBridge, functions	134	Printer utility for Mac	338
PictBridge, image print size	136	Printer utility, installing	338
PictBridge, index printing	134	Printer utility, Mac functions	339
PictBridge, multi image layout	137	Printer utility, starting	339
PictBridge, paper size	136	Printer's system log	258, 286
PictBridge, paper type	139	Printing all print jobs	108
PictBridge, printing	132	Printing from the print job screen	93
PictBridge, printing quality	139	Printing notification	297
PictBridge, toner saving	140	Printing the selected print job	107
PictBridge, trimming	135	prnlog	274
PostScript 32	23, 76, 318	Profiles, Bluetooth	53
PostScript 3, Mac OS	309	Protpcol information	248
PostScript files, downloading	343	Pure IP	302
PPD file, Mac OS	309, 310	Pure IP environment, NetWare 5.x	302
PPD file, Mac OS X	313	Pure IP environment, NetWare 6.x	302
Preparing printer server	297	Q	
Preventing information leaks	348		
Print job	93	Quick Install	23
Print job function	90	R	
Print job information	242, 274	rcp268, 2	274 286 360
Print job screen	90	Remote maintenance	
Print log information	246, 274	Remote printer	
Print server, NetWare 3.x	300	Remote printer, NetWare 3.x	
Print server, NetWare 4.x	301	Remote printer, NetWare 4.x	
Print server, NetWare 5.x	301	Remote printer, NetWare 5.x	
Print server, NetWare 6.x	301	Remote printer, NetWare 6.x	
Print Settings menu	172	Renaming the printer	
Print Settings menu, changing	172	Resetting the printer	
Print Settings menu, parameters	172	Resolution Mac OS	320

Restarting the printer	343	Spool printing	118
Ricoh host printing protocol	246	Spool printing, setting	118
Routing table	247	Spool printing, viewing or deleting	119
RPCS	23, 70	SSDP	257
rsh26	8, 274, 286	SSL encryption	351
S		Standard TCP/IP port	
		status	268
Sample Print, deleting		Stored Print, deleting	106
Sample Print, Mac OS		Stored Print, Mac OS	325
Sample Print, printing		Stored Print, printing	104
Screen fonts, Mac OS		Symbols	13
Security Options menu	181	syslog	286
Security Options menu, changing	181	System log information	
Security Options menu, parameters	181	System menu	
Selecting the Zone	343	System menu, changing	
Sending e-mail notification	224	System menu, parameters	
Separate into CMYK, Mac OS	335		
Setting up options, Mac OS	310	<u>I</u>	
Setting up options, Mac OS X	314	TCP/IP	25, 26, 240
sftp268, 27	4, 286, 360	telnet	227, 231, 264
show	275	Top Page	196
slp	251	Troubleshooting, PictBridge	
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin		Troubleshooting, printer driver	
address information	216	Troubleshooting, USB	
changing names and comments		-	
changing the paper type		U	
Energy Saver mode		Unauthorized copy control	86
Fax Journal		Universal plug and play	259
locking the menus		USB connection	47
new users		USB interface, Mac OS X	314
NIB Setup Tool number of sheets printed		User authentication	
printer status		User code, Mac OS	
resetting the number of pages printed		User ID screen	
restricting functions		User Paper Type	
setting a password		User paper type, printing	
spool printing	215	User paper type, registering names	
User Management Tool	206	User paper type, setting	
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client24	4, 217, 297, 356	V	120
${\sf SmartDevice} {\sf Monitor} \ {\sf for} \ {\sf Client} \ {\sf port}$	24	Virtual printer	121.360
smb	252	Virtual printer, adding	
SNMP	252, 267	Virtual printer, changing	
SNTP	255	Virtual printer, confirming	
Software and Utilities	353	Virtual printer, deleting	
		rinoui primer, deleiling	1 Z S

Virtual printer, printing123
W
Web Image Monitor125, 195, 259, 295
Web Image Monitor, administrator mode198
Web Image Monitor, e-mail notification220
Web Image Monitor, guest mode198
Web Image Monitor, Help200
Web Image Monitor, top page196
Windows 200047, 56, 65, 70, 76
Windows Server 200347, 56, 66, 76
Windows Server 2003 R247, 56, 66, 72, 76
Windows Terminal Service364
Windows Terminal Service, limitations364
Windows Vista48, 57, 68, 73, 77
Windows XP47, 56, 57, 66, 72, 76
WINS server368
WINS server, Web Image Monitor368
Wireless LAN interface unit372
WS-MFP265
WSD port38

MEMO

